

# CONSTITUTION & CANONS 1973



## **Digital Copyright Notice**

Copyright 2022. The Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America

All rights reserved. Limited reproduction of excerpts of this is permitted for personal research and educational activities. Systematic or multiple copy reproduction; electronic retransmission or redistribution; print or electronic duplication of any material for a fee or for commercial purposes; altering or re-compiling any contents of this document for electronic re-display, and all other re-publication that does not qualify as *fair use* are not permitted without prior written permission.

Send written requests for permission to re-publish to:

### **Rights and Permissions Office**

The Archives of the Episcopal Church  
107 Denson Drive  
Austin, Texas 78752  
Email: [research@episcopalarchives.org](mailto:research@episcopalarchives.org)  
Telephone: 512-472-6816

# CONSTITUTION & CANONS

FOR THE GOVERNMENT OF THE  
PROTESTANT EPISCOPAL CHURCH  
IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

## the episcopal church

ADOPTED IN GENERAL CONVENTIONS  
1789-1973

Printed for the Convention

# 1973



---

## CONTENTS

### CONSTITUTION OF THE GENERAL CONVENTION

Preamble	1
Article I. Of the General Convention .....	1
II. Of Bishops.....	3
III. Of Bishops Consecrated for Foreign Lands .....	4
IV. Of the Standing Committee .....	4
V. Of Admission of New Dioceses .....	4
VI. Of Missionary Dioceses .....	6
VII. Of Provinces .....	6
VIII. Of Requisites for Ordination .....	6
IX. Of Courts.....	7
X. Of The Book of Common Prayer .....	7
XI. Of Amendments to the Constitution .....	8

### CANONS OF THE GENERAL CONVENTION

<i>Title I. Organization and Administration.....</i>	
Canon 1 Of the General Convention .....	11
2 Of the Presiding Bishop .....	18
3 Of the Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society .....	19
4 Of the Executive Council .....	20
5 Of the Mode of Securing an Accurate View of the State of this Church .....	24
6 Of Business Methods in Church Affairs .....	25
7 Of The Church Pension Fund .....	26
8 Of Provinces .....	28
9 Of New Dioceses.....	30
10 Of Missionary Jurisdictions .....	31
11 Of Standing Committees.....	33
12 Of Parishes and Congregations .....	34
13 Of Parish Vestries.....	34
14 Of Congregations in Foreign Lands .....	35
15 Of Clergy and Congregations Seeking Affiliation with this Church .....	37
16 Of Regulations Respecting the Laity.....	37
17 Of the Solemnization of Holy Matrimony .....	39
18 Of Regulations Respecting Holy Matrimony: Concerning Preservation of Marriage, Dissolution of Marriage, and Re-marriage.....	40
<i>Title II. Worship.....</i>	
Canon 1 Of the Due Celebration of Sundays.....	43
2 Of Translations of the Bible.....	43
3 Of the Standard Book of Common Prayer .....	43
4 Of a Standing Liturgical Commission .....	45
5 Of the Authorization of Special Forms of Service .....	46
6 Of the Music of the Church.....	46
7 Of the Dedication and Consecration of Churches .....	47

---

---

<i>Title III. The Ministry</i> .....			
Canon	1	Of a Diocesan Commission on Ministry .....	49
	2	Of Candidates for Holy Orders .....	49
	3	Of General Provisions Concerning Candidates for Holy Orders .....	54
	4	(Reserved) .....	
	5	Of the Normal Standard of Learning and Examination of Candidates for Holy Orders .....	55
	6	Of a Board for Theological Education .....	56
	7	Of a General Board of Examining Chaplains .....	56
	8	Of Admission to Holy Orders in Special Cases .....	58
	9	Of General Provisions Respecting Ordination .....	59
	10	Of Ordination to the Diaconate .....	60
	11	Of Ordination to the Priesthood .....	64
	12	Of Ministers Ordained in Churches Not in Communion with this Church .....	67
	13	Of Ministers Ordained in Foreign Countries by Bishops in Communion with this Church .....	69
	14	Of the Ordination and Consecration of Bishops .....	70
	15	Of Missionary Bishops .....	73
	16	Of Suffragan Bishops .....	76
	17	Of the Consecration of Bishops for Foreign Lands .....	78
	18	Of Duties of Bishops .....	80
	19	Of Duties of Missionary Bishops .....	83
	20	Of Ministers and Their Duties .....	83
	21	Of the Dissolution of the Pastoral Relation .....	89
	22	Of the Filling of Vacant Cures .....	90
	23	Of Deacons .....	90
	24	Of Persons Not Ministers in this Church Officiating in any Congregation Thereof .....	91
	25	Of Lay Readers .....	91
	26	Of Women in the Diaconate .....	93
	27	Of Religious Communities .....	94
	28	Of Professional Church Workers .....	95
	29	Of Lay Ministries .....	95
<i>Title IV. Ecclesiastical Discipline</i> .....			
Canon	1	Of Offenses for which Bishops, Presbyters, or Deacons May Be Tried .....	97
	2	Of Amenability, Citation, and Attendance .....	98
	3	Of Courts, Their Membership and Procedure .....	98
	4	Of Presentments .....	105
	5	Of the Trial of a Bishop .....	107
	6	Of Appeals to the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop ..	110
	7	Of a Minister in any Diocese Chargeable with Offense in Another .....	111
	8	Of Renunciation of the Ministry .....	112
	9	Of the Abandonment of the Communion of this Church by a Bishop .....	112
	10	Of the Abandonment of the Communion of this Church by a Presbyter or Deacon .....	113

---

---

11	Of a Minister Absenting Himself from his Diocese, or Abandoning the Work of the Ministry .....	113
12	Of Sentences .....	114
13	Of the Remission or Modification of Judicial Sentences .....	116
<i>Title V. Canonical Legislation</i>		
Canon	1 Of Enactment, Amendment, and Repeal.....	119
	2 Of Terminology Used in these Canons .....	119
Index .....		121

---



# CONSTITUTION

## PREAMBLE, ARTICLE I.

---

### CONSTITUTION

#### PREAMBLE

The Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, otherwise known as The Episcopal Church (which name is hereby recognized as also designating the Church), is a constituent member of the Anglican Communion, a Fellowship within the One, Holy, Catholic, and Apostolic Church, of those duly constituted Dioceses, Provinces, and regional Churches in communion with the See of Canterbury, upholding and propagating the historic Faith and Order as set forth in the Book of Common Prayer. This Constitution, adopted in General Convention in Philadelphia in October, 1789, as amended in subsequent General Conventions, sets forth the basic Articles for the government of this Church, and of its overseas missionary jurisdictions.

Name of Church.

Anglican  
Communion.

#### ARTICLE I.

Sec. 1. There shall be a General Convention of this Church, consisting of the House of Bishops and the House of Deputies, which Houses shall sit and deliberate separately; and in all deliberations freedom of debate shall be allowed. Either House may originate and propose legislation, and all acts of the Convention shall be adopted and be authenticated by both Houses.

General  
Convention.

Sec. 2. Each Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction, every Bishop Coadjutor, every Suffragan Bishop, and every Bishop who by reason of advanced age or bodily infirmity, or who, under an election to an office created by the General Convention, or for reasons of mission strategy determined by action of the General Convention or the House of Bishops, has resigned his jurisdiction, shall have a seat and a vote in the House of Bishops. A majority of all Bishops entitled to vote, exclusive of Bishops who have resigned their jurisdiction or positions, shall be necessary to constitute a quorum for the transaction of business.

House of Bishops.

Quorum.

Sec. 3. At the General Convention next before the expiration of the term of office of the Presiding Bishop, it shall elect the Presiding Bishop of the Church. The House of Bishops shall choose one of the Bishops of this Church to be the Presiding Bishop of the Church by a vote of a majority of all Bishops, excluding retired Bishops not present, except that whenever two-thirds of the House of Bishops are present a majority vote shall suffice, such choice to be subject to confirmation by the House of Deputies. His term and tenure of office and duties and particulars of his election not inconsistent with the preceding provisions shall be prescribed by the Canons of the General Convention.

Election of  
Presiding Bishop.

Term and Tenure  
of Office.

But if the Presiding Bishop of the Church shall resign his office as such, or if by reason of infirmity he shall become disabled, or in case of his death, the Bishop who, according to the Rules of the House of Bishops, becomes its Presiding Officer, shall (unless the date of the next General Convention is within three months) immediately call a special meeting of the House of Bishops, to elect a member thereof to be the Presiding Bishop. The certificate of election on the part of the House of Bishops shall be sent by the Presiding Officer to the Standing

Succession in  
case of  
resignation,  
death, or  
disability.



# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLE I.

---

Committees of the several Dioceses, and if a majority of the Standing Committees of all the Dioceses shall concur in the election, the Bishop elected shall become the Presiding Bishop of the Church.

House of  
Deputies.

Sec. 4. The Church in each Diocese which has been admitted to union with the General Convention shall be entitled to representation in the House of Deputies by not more than four Presbyters, canonically resident in the Diocese, and not more than four Lay Persons, communicants of this Church, having domicile in the Diocese; but the General Convention by Canon may reduce the representation to not fewer than two Deputies in each order. Each Diocese shall prescribe the manner in which its Deputies shall be chosen.

Deputies of  
Dioceses.

Deputies of  
Missionary  
Dioceses.

The Church in each Missionary Diocese beyond the territory of the United States of America, which shall have been established by the House of Bishops or by the Constitution, and the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, shall each be entitled to representation in the House of Deputies equal to that of other Dioceses, subject to all the qualifications, and with all of the rights, of Deputies, except as otherwise provided in this Constitution. Each such Missionary Diocese, and the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, shall prescribe the manner in which its Deputies shall be chosen.

Quorum.

To constitute a quorum for the transaction of business, the Clerical order shall be represented by at least one Deputy in each of a majority of the Dioceses entitled to representation, and the Lay order shall likewise be represented by at least one Deputy in each of a majority of the Dioceses entitled to representation.

When majority  
vote shall suffice.

On any question the vote of a majority of the Deputies present shall suffice, unless otherwise ordered by this Constitution, or, in cases not specifically provided for by the Constitution, by Canons requiring more than a majority, or unless the Clerical or the Lay representation from any Diocese require that the vote be taken by orders. In all cases of a vote by orders, the two orders shall vote separately, each Diocese and Missionary Diocese having one vote in the Clerical order and one vote in the Lay order; and the concurrence of the votes of the two orders shall be necessary to constitute a vote of the House. No action of either order shall pass in the affirmative unless it receives the majority of all votes cast, and unless the sum of all the affirmative votes shall exceed the sum of other votes by at least one whole vote.

Vote by orders.

Adjournment.

Sec. 5. In either House any number less than a quorum may adjourn from day to day. Neither House, without the consent of the other, shall adjourn for more than three days, or to any place other than that in which the Convention shall be sitting.

Time and place  
of meeting.

Sec. 6. The General Convention shall meet not less than once in each three years, at a time and place appointed by a preceding Convention; but if there shall appear to the Presiding Bishop, acting with the advice and consent of the Executive Council of the Church or of a successor canonical body having substantially the powers now vested in the Executive Council, sufficient cause for changing the place or date so appointed, he, with the advice and consent of such body, shall appoint another place or date, or both, for such meeting. Special meetings may be provided for by Canon.

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLE II.

---

### ARTICLE II.

Sec. 1. In every Diocese the Bishop or the Bishop Coadjutor shall be chosen agreeably to rules prescribed by the Convention of that Diocese. Bishops of Missionary Dioceses shall be chosen in accordance with the Canons of the General Convention.

Election of Bishops.

Sec. 2. No one shall be ordained and consecrated Bishop until he shall be thirty years of age; nor without the consent of a majority of the Standing Committees of all the Dioceses, and the consent of a majority of the Bishops of this Church exercising jurisdiction. But if the election shall have taken place within three months next before the meeting of the General Convention, the consent of the House of Deputies shall be required in place of that of a majority of the Standing Committees. No one shall be ordained and consecrated Bishop by fewer than three Bishops.

Required age.

Consent to election.

Consecration.

Sec. 3. A Bishop shall confine the exercise of his office to his own Diocese or Missionary Diocese, unless he shall have been requested to perform episcopal acts in another Diocese or Missionary Diocese by the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof, or unless he shall have been authorized by the House of Bishops, or by the Presiding Bishop by its direction, to act temporarily in case of need within any territory not yet organized into Dioceses or Missionary Dioceses of this Church.

Jurisdiction of Bishops.

Sec. 4. It shall be lawful for a Diocese, with consent of the Bishop of that Diocese, to elect one or more Suffragan Bishops, without right of succession, and with seat and vote in the House of Bishops. A Suffragan Bishop shall be consecrated and hold office under such conditions and limitations other than those provided in this Article as may be provided by Canons of the General Convention. He shall be eligible as Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor of a Diocese, or as a Suffragan in another Diocese, or may be elected by the House of Bishops as a Bishop of a Missionary Diocese.

Suffragan Bishops.

Sec. 5. It shall be lawful for a Diocese to prescribe by the Constitution and Canons of such Diocese that upon the death of the Bishop a Suffragan Bishop of that Diocese may be placed in charge of such Diocese and become temporarily the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof until such time as a new Bishop shall be chosen and consecrated; or that during the disability or absence of the Bishop a Suffragan Bishop of that Diocese may be placed in charge of such Diocese and become temporarily the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof.

May become Ecclesiastical Authority.

Sec. 6. A Bishop may not resign his jurisdiction without the consent of the House of Bishops.

Resignation.

Sec. 7. It shall be lawful for the House of Bishops to elect a Suffragan Bishop who, under the direction of the Presiding Bishop, shall be in charge of the work of those chaplains in the Armed Forces of the United States who are ordained Ministers of this Church. The Suffragan Bishop so elected shall be consecrated and hold office under such conditions and limitations other than those provided in this Article as may be provided by Canons of the General Convention. He shall be eligible as Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor or Suffragan Bishop of a Diocese, or he may be elected by the House of Bishops as a Bishop of a Missionary Diocese.

Suffragan Bishop for Armed Forces.

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLES II, III, IV, V.

---

Election of Bishops and Bishops Coadjutor to other jurisdictions.

Must have served five years.

Resignation procedure must be followed.

Compulsory retirement age.

Bishops consecrated for foreign lands.

Standing Committees.

Admission of new Dioceses.

Sec. 8. A Bishop exercising jurisdiction as the Ordinary, or as the Bishop Coadjutor, of a Diocese or Missionary Diocese, may be elected as Bishop, Bishop Coadjutor, or Suffragan Bishop, of another Diocese, or may be elected by the House of Bishops as a Bishop of a Missionary Diocese; *Provided*, that he shall have served not less than five years in his present jurisdiction; and *Provided always*, that before acceptance of such election he shall tender to the House of Bishops his resignation of his jurisdiction in the Diocese in which he is then serving, subject to the required consents of the Bishops and Standing Committees of the Church, and also, if he be a Bishop Coadjutor, his right of succession therein, and such resignation, and renunciation of the right of succession in the case of a Bishop Coadjutor, shall be consented to by the House of Bishops.

Sec. 9. Upon attaining the age of seventy-two years a Bishop shall tender his resignation from his jurisdiction.

### ARTICLE III.

Bishops may be consecrated for foreign lands upon due application therefrom, with the approbation of a majority of the Bishops of this Church entitled to vote in the House of Bishops, certified to the Presiding Bishop; under such conditions as may be prescribed by Canons of the General Convention. Bishops so consecrated shall not be eligible to the office of Diocesan or of Bishop Coadjutor of any Diocese in the United States or be entitled to vote in the House of Bishops, nor shall they perform any act of the episcopal office in any Diocese or Missionary Diocese of this Church, unless requested so to do by the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof. If a Bishop so consecrated shall be subsequently duly elected as a Bishop of a Missionary Diocese of this Church he shall then enjoy all the rights and privileges given in the Canon to such Bishops.

### ARTICLE IV.

In every Diocese a Standing Committee shall be appointed by the Convention thereof. When there is a Bishop in charge of the Diocese, the Standing Committee shall be his Council of Advice. If there be no Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor or Suffragan Bishop canonically authorized to act, the Standing Committee shall be the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese for all purposes declared by the General Convention. The rights and duties of the Standing Committee, except as provided in the Constitution and Canons of the General Convention, may be prescribed by the Canons of the respective Dioceses.

### ARTICLE V.

Sec. 1. A new Diocese may be formed, with the consent of the General Convention and under such conditions as the General Convention shall prescribe by General Canon or Canons, (1) by the division of an existing Diocese; (2) by the junction of two or more Dioceses or of parts of two or more Dioceses; or (3) by the erection into a Diocese of an unorganized area evangelized as provided in Article VI. The proceedings shall originate in a Convocation of the Clergy and Laity of the unorganized area called by the Bishop for that purpose; or, with the approval of the Bishop, in the Convention of the

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLE V.

---

Diocese to be divided; or (when it is proposed to form a new Diocese by the junction of two or more Dioceses or of parts of two or more Dioceses), by mutual agreement of the Conventions of the Dioceses concerned, with the approval of the Bishop of each Diocese. In case the Episcopate of a Diocese be vacant, no proceedings toward its division shall be taken until the vacancy is filled. When it shall appear to the satisfaction of the General Convention, by a certified copy of the proceedings and other documents and papers laid before it, that all the conditions for the formation of the new Diocese have been complied with and that it has acceded to the Constitution and Canons of this Church, such new Diocese shall thereupon be admitted to union with the General Convention.

Sec. 2. In case one Diocese shall be divided into two or more Dioceses, the Bishop of the Diocese divided may elect the one to which he will be attached, and he shall thereupon become the Bishop thereof; and the Bishop Coadjutor, if there be one, may elect the one to which he shall be attached, and (if it be not the one elected by the Bishop) he shall be the Bishop thereof.

Rights of the Diocesan and the Bishop Coadjutor.

Sec. 3. In case a Diocese shall be formed out of parts of two or more Dioceses, each of the Bishops and Bishops Coadjutor of the several Dioceses out of which the new Diocese has been formed shall be entitled, in order of seniority of consecration, to the choice between his own Diocese and the new Diocese so formed. In case the new Diocese shall not be so chosen, it shall have the right to choose its own Bishop.

Rights of Bishops when new Diocese formed from parts of two or more Dioceses.

Sec. 4. Whenever a new Diocese is formed and erected out of an existing Diocese, it shall be subject to the Constitution and Canons of the Diocese out of which it was formed, except as local circumstances may prevent, until the same be altered in accordance with such Constitution and Canons by the Convention of the new Diocese. Whenever a Diocese is formed out of two or more existing Dioceses, it shall be subject to the Constitution and Canons of that one of the said existing Dioceses to which the greater number of clergymen shall have belonged prior to the erection of such new Diocese, except as local circumstances may prevent, until the same be altered in accordance with such Constitution and Canons by the Convention of the new Diocese.

Constitution and Canons of new Dioceses.

Sec. 5. No new Diocese shall be formed unless it shall contain at least six Parishes and at least six Presbyters who have been for at least one year canonically resident within the bounds of such new Diocese, regularly settled in a Parish or Congregation and qualified to vote for a Bishop. Nor shall such new Diocese be formed if thereby any existing Diocese shall be so reduced as to contain fewer than twelve Parishes and twelve Presbyters who have been residing therein and settled and qualified as above provided.

Limit of Presbyters and Parishes.

Sec. 6. By mutual agreement between the Conventions of two adjoining Dioceses, consented to by the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese, a portion of the territory of one of said Dioceses may be ceded to the other Diocese, such cession to be considered complete upon approval thereof by the General Convention or by a majority of Bishops having jurisdiction in the United States and of the Standing

Cession of diocesan territory.

General Convention to approve.

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLES V, VI, VII, VIII.

---

Section 3 not applicable.

Rights of Bishops of ceding and receiving Dioceses.

Committees of the Dioceses in accordance with the Canons of this Church. Thereupon the part of the territory so ceded shall become a part of the Diocese accepting the same. The provisions of Section 3 of this Article V. shall not apply in such case, and the Bishop and Bishop Coadjutor, if any, of the Diocese ceding such territory shall continue in their jurisdiction over the remainder of such Diocese, and the Bishop and Bishop Coadjutor, if any, of the Diocese accepting cession of such territory shall continue in jurisdiction over such Diocese and shall have jurisdiction in that part of the territory of the other Diocese that has been so ceded and accepted.

### ARTICLE VI.

Mission Areas may be established.

Sec. 1. The House of Bishops may establish a Mission in any area not included within the boundaries of any Diocese of this Church or of any Church in communion with this Church, and elect or appoint a Bishop therefor.

Cession of jurisdiction.

Sec. 2. The General Convention may accept a cession of the territorial jurisdiction of a part of a Diocese when such cession shall have been proposed by the Bishop and the Convention of such Diocese, and consent thereto shall have been given by three-fourths of the Parishes in the ceded territory, and also by the same ratio of the Parishes within the remaining territory.

Retrocession of such jurisdiction.

Any territorial jurisdiction or any part of the same, which may have been ceded by a Diocese under the foregoing provision, may be retroceded to the said Diocese by such joint action of all the several parties as is herein required for its cession, save that in the case of retrocession of territory the consent of Parishes within the territory retroceded shall not be necessary; *Provided* that such action of the General Convention, whether of cession or retrocession, shall be by a vote of two-thirds of all the Bishops present and voting and by a vote of two-thirds of the House of Deputies voting by orders.

Organization of Missionary Dioceses.

Sec. 3. Missionary Dioceses shall be organized as may be prescribed by Canon of the General Convention.

### ARTICLE VII.

Provinces.

Dioceses and Missionary Dioceses may be united into Provinces in such manner, under such conditions, and with such powers, as shall be provided by Canon of the General Convention; *Provided, however*, that no Diocese shall be included in a Province without its own consent.

### ARTICLE VIII.

Requisites for ordination.

No person shall be ordered Priest or Deacon to minister in this Church until he shall have been examined by the Bishop and two Priests and shall have exhibited such testimonials and other requisites as the Canons in that case provided may direct. No persons shall be ordained and consecrated Bishop, or ordered Priest or Deacon to minister in this Church, unless at the time, in the presence of the ordaining Bishop or Bishops, he shall subscribe and make the following declaration:

Declaration.

**"I do believe the Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments to be the Word of God, and to contain all things necessary to**

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLES VIII, IX, X.

---

salvation; and I do solemnly engage to conform to the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America.”

*Provided, however,* that any person consecrated a Bishop to minister in any Diocese or Missionary Diocese of an autonomous Church or Province of a Church in communion with this Church may, instead of the foregoing declaration, make the promises of Conformity required by the Church in which he is to minister.

Proviso.

If any Bishop ordains a Priest or Deacon to minister elsewhere than in this Church, or confers ordination as Priest or Deacon upon a Christian minister who has not received Episcopal ordination, he shall do so only in accordance with such provisions as shall be set forth in the Canons of this Church.

No person ordained by a foreign Bishop, or by a Bishop not in communion with this Church, shall be permitted to officiate as a Minister of this Church until he shall have complied with the Canon or Canons in that case provided and also shall have subscribed the aforesaid declaration.

Admission of foreign clergymen.

### ARTICLE IX.

The General Convention may, by Canon, establish a Court for the trial of Bishops, which shall be composed of Bishops only.

Court of trial of Bishops.

Presbyters and Deacons canonically resident in a Diocese shall be tried by a Court instituted by the Convention thereof; Presbyters and Deacons canonically resident in a Missionary Diocese shall be tried according to Canons adopted by the Bishop and Convocation thereof, with the approval of the House of Bishops; *Provided,* that the General Convention in each case may prescribe by Canon for a change of venue.

For trial of Presbyters and Deacons.

The General Convention, in like manner, may establish or may provide for the establishment of Courts of Review of the determination of diocesan or other trial Courts.

Courts of Review.

The Court for the review of the determination of the trial Court, on the trial of a Bishop, shall be composed of Bishops only.

Of Bishops to be composed of Bishops.

The General Convention, in like manner, may establish an ultimate Court of Appeal, solely for the review of the determination of any Court of Review on questions of Doctrine, Faith, or Worship.

Court of Appeal.

None but a Bishop shall pronounce sentence of suspension, or removal, or deposition from the Ministry, on any Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon; and none but a Bishop shall admonish any Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon.

Bishop to pronounce sentence.

A sentence of suspension shall specify on what terms or conditions and at what time the suspension shall cease. A sentence of suspension may be remitted in such manner as may be provided by Canon.

Suspension.

### ARTICLE X.

The Book of Common Prayer and Administration of the Sacraments and other Rites and Ceremonies of the Church, together with the Psalter or Psalms of David, the Form and Manner of Making, Ordaining, and Consecrating Bishops, Priests, and Deacons, the Form

The Book of Common Prayer.

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLES X, XI.

---

Alterations or additions, how to be made.

of Consecration of a Church or Chapel, the Office of Institution of Ministers, and Articles of Religion, as now established or hereafter amended by the authority of this Church, shall be in use in all the Dioceses and Missionary Dioceses, and in the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, of this Church. No alteration thereof or addition thereto shall be made unless the same shall be first proposed in one regular meeting of the General Convention and by a resolve thereof be sent within six months to the Secretary of the Convention of every Diocese and of the Convocation of every Missionary Diocese and of the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, to be made known to the Diocesan Convention or Convocation of the Missionary Diocese or of the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, at its next meeting, and be adopted by the General Convention at its next succeeding regular meeting by a majority of all Bishops, excluding retired Bishops not present, of the whole number of Bishops entitled to vote in the House of Bishops, and by a majority of the Clerical and Lay Deputies of all the Dioceses entitled to representation in the House of Deputies, and all the Missionary Dioceses, and of the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, voting by orders, each to have the vote provided for in Article I., Sec. 4.

Exceptions.

But notwithstanding anything hereinabove contained, the General Convention may at any one meeting, by a majority of the whole number of the Bishops entitled to vote in the House of Bishops, and by a majority of the Clerical and Lay Deputies of all the Dioceses entitled to representation in the House of Deputies, and all the Missionary Dioceses, and the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, voting by orders as previously laid down in this Article,

Lectionary.

(a). Amend the Table of Lessons and all Tables and Rubrics relating to the Psalms;

Trial use.

(b). Authorize for trial use throughout this Church, as an alternative at any time or times to the established Book of Common Prayer or to any section or Office thereof, a proposed revision of the whole Book or of any portion thereof, duly undertaken by the General Convention.

Special forms of worship.

And *Provided*, that nothing in this Article shall be construed as restricting the authority of the Bishops of this Church to take such order as may be permitted by the Rubrics of the Book of Common Prayer or by the Canons of the General Convention for the use of special forms of worship.

### ARTICLE XI.

Alterations or amendments.

No alteration or amendment of this Constitution shall be made unless the same shall be first proposed at one regular meeting of the General Convention and by a resolve thereof be sent to the Secretary of the Convention of every Diocese and of the Convocation of every Missionary Diocese and of the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, to be made known to the Diocesan Convention or the Missionary Diocese Convocation or the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe at its next meeting, and be adopted by the General Convention at its next succeeding regular meeting by a majority of all Bishops, excluding retired Bishops not present, of the

# CONSTITUTION

## ARTICLE XI.

---

whole number of Bishops entitled to vote in the House of Bishops, and by a majority of the Clerical and Lay Deputies of all the Dioceses and of all the Missionary Dioceses and the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe entitled to representation in the House of Deputies, voting by orders, each having the vote provided for in Sec. 4 of Article I.

Each duly adopted alteration or amendment to this Constitution, unless otherwise expressly stated therein, shall take effect on the first day of January following the adjournment of the General Convention at which it is finally adopted.

Effective date.





**TITLE I.**  
**CANON 1.**

---

**CANONS**

---

**AS AMENDED, ADOPTED, AND CODIFIED IN  
GENERAL CONVENTION, 1943, AND  
SUBSEQUENTLY AMENDED**

---

**TITLE I.**  
**ORGANIZATION AND ADMINISTRATION**

---

**CANON 1.**

**Of the General Convention**

Sec. 1 (a). At the time and place appointed for the meeting of the General Convention, the President of the House of Deputies, or, in his absence, the Vice-President of the House, or, if there be neither, a Chairman *pro tempore* appointed by the members of the House of Deputies on the Joint Committee of Arrangements for the General Convention, shall call to order the members present. The Secretary, or, in his absence, a Secretary *pro tempore* appointed by the presiding officer, shall record the names of those whose testimonials, in due form, shall have been presented to him, which record shall be *prima facie* evidence that the persons whose names are therein recorded are entitled to seats. If there be a quorum present, the Secretary shall so certify, and the House shall proceed to organize by the election, by ballot, of a Secretary, and a majority of the votes cast shall be necessary to such election. Upon such election, the presiding officer shall declare the House organized. If there be a vacancy in the office of President or Vice-President, the vacancy or vacancies shall then be filled by election, by ballot, the term of any officer so elected to continue until the adjournment of the General Convention. As soon as such vacancies are filled, the President shall appoint a committee to wait upon the House of Bishops and inform them of the organization of the House of Deputies, and of its readiness to proceed to business.

Of the organizing  
of the House of  
Deputies.

(b). There shall be a President and a Vice-President of the House of Deputies, who shall perform the duties normally appropriate to their respective offices or specified in these Canons. They shall be elected not later than the seventh day of each regular meeting of the General Convention in the manner herein set forth. The House of Deputies shall elect from its membership by a majority of separate ballots, a President and a Vice-President, who shall be of different orders. Such officers shall take office at the adjournment of the regular meeting at which they are elected, and shall continue in office until the adjournment of the following regular meeting of the General Convention. They shall be and remain *ex officio* members of the House during their term of office. No person elected President or Vice-President shall be eligible for more than three consecutive full terms in each respective office. In case of resignation, death, absence, or inability, of the President, the Vice-President shall perform the duties of the office until a new President is elected. The President shall be authorized to appoint an Advisory Council to consult and advise with him in the performance of his office.

President and  
Vice-President,  
how elected.

Advisory  
Council.

# CANONS—OLD AND NEW NUMBERS

Former No.	Present No.	Former No.	Present No.	Former No.	Present No.
	<b>Title I</b>				
1	1	24	6	46	22
2	2	25	7	47	23
3	3		<b>Title III</b>	48	24
4	4		1	49	25
5	5	—	2	50	26
6	6	26 } 27 }	3	51	27
7	7	28	4	52	28
8	8		4 (Reserved)	—	29
9	9	29	5		<b>Title IV</b>
10	10	30	6	53	1
11	11	31	7	54	2
12	12	32	8	55	3
13	13	33	9	56	4
14	14	34	10	57	5
15	15	35	11	58	6
16	16	36	12	59	7
17	17	37	13	60	8
18	18	38	14	61	9
		39	15	62	10
		40	16	63	11
		41	17	64	12
		42	18	65	13
		43	19		<b>Title V</b>
		44	20	66	1
		45	21	—	2
			21		
			22		
			23		



**TITLE I**  
**CANON 1.**

---

Testimonials of Deputies and Diocesan Journals to be sent to the Secretary.

(c). In order to aid the Secretary in preparing the record specified in Clause (a), it shall be the duty of the Secretary of the Convention of every Diocese to forward to him, as soon as may be practicable, a copy of the latest Journal of the Diocesan Convention, together with a certified copy of the testimonials of members aforesaid. He shall also forward a duplicate copy of such testimonials to the Standing Committee of the Diocese in which the General Convention is next to meet.

Secretary to keep minutes, etc.

(d). The Secretary shall keep full minutes of the proceedings of the House; record them, with all reports, in a book provided for that purpose; preserve the Journals and Records of the House; deliver them to the Registrar, as hereinafter provided, and perform such other duties as may be directed by the House. He may, with the approval of the House, appoint Assistant Secretaries, and the Secretary and Assistant Secretaries shall continue in office until the organization of the next General Convention, and until their successors be chosen.

Notices of Amendments to Constitution and Prayer Book.

(e). It shall be the duty of the Secretary of the House of Deputies, whenever any alteration of the Book of Common Prayer or of the Constitution is proposed, or any other subject submitted to the consideration of the several Diocesan Conventions, to give notice thereof to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Church in every Diocese, as well as to the Secretary of the Convention of every Diocese, and written evidence that the foregoing requirement has been complied with shall be presented by him to the General Convention at its next session. All such notices shall be sent by registered mail, return receipts being required. He shall notify each Secretary that it is his duty to make known such proposed alterations of the Book of Common Prayer, and of the Constitution, and such other subjects, to the Convention of his Diocese at its next meeting, and to certify to the Secretary of the House of Deputies that such action has been taken by him.

Secretary and Treasurer entitled to seats, not votes.

(f). The Secretary of the House of Deputies and the Treasurer of the General Convention shall be entitled to seats upon the floor of the House, and, with the consent of the President, they may speak on the subjects of their respective offices.

Rules and Orders of the House of Deputies.

(g). At the meetings of the House of Deputies the Rules and Orders of the previous meeting shall be in force until they are amended or repealed by the House.

Vacancy in offices of President and Vice-President.

(h). In case of the resignation, death, or total disability of the President and Vice-President during the recess of the General Convention, the Secretary of the House of Deputies shall perform such *ad interim* duties as may appertain to the office of President until the next meeting of the General Convention or until such disability is removed.

Appointment of Secretary in case of vacancy during recess.

(i). If, during recess, a vacancy shall occur in the office of Secretary of the House of Deputies, the duties thereof shall devolve upon the First Assistant Secretary, or, if there be none such, upon a Secretary *pro tempore* appointed by the President of the House, or if the office of President be also vacant, then by the Vice-President, and if both offices be vacant, then by the members from the House of Deputies of

# TITLE I

## CANON 1.

---

the Joint Committee on Arrangements for the next General Convention, appointed by the preceding General Convention.

(j). At every regular meeting of the General Convention, the Secretary elected by the House of Deputies shall, by concurrent action of the two Houses of the General Convention, also be made the Secretary of the General Convention, who shall have responsibility for the printing of the Journal of the General Convention, and attend to any other matters which may be referred to him.

Secretary of House of Deputies to be Secretary of Convention.

Sec. 2 (a). The General Convention, by concurrent Resolution, may establish Joint Committees and Joint Commissions, to which may be referred matters requiring interim consideration. The enabling Resolution shall specify the size and composition of each such Committee or Commission.

Joint Committees & Commissions.

(b). A Joint Committee shall be composed of members of the two Houses; a Joint Commission may include clergymen and lay persons not members of the House of Deputies.

How constituted.

(c). The Presiding Bishop shall appoint the episcopal members, and the President of the House of Deputies the lay and clerical members, of such Joint Committees and Joint Commissions as soon as practicable after the adjournment of the General Convention; one member of each Joint Commission to be appointed from the membership of Executive Council to serve as liaison therewith.

Appointment of Members.

(d). The Presiding Bishop and the President of the House of Deputies shall be members *ex officio* of every Joint Committee and Joint Commission with the right, but no obligation, to attend meetings, and with seat and vote in the deliberations thereof, and shall receive their minutes and an annual report of their activities; *Provided*, that the said presiding officers may appoint personal representatives to attend any meeting in their stead, but without vote.

*Ex officio* Members.

(e). Joint Committees and Joint Commissions shall report and make recommendations to the General Convention next following upon their appointment, at the conclusion of which Convention they shall be deemed to have been discharged, unless specific action to the contrary be taken, or unless otherwise provided in these Canons.

Report to General Convention.

(f). There shall be a Standing Commission on the Structure of the Church. It shall be the duty of the Commission to study and make recommendations concerning the structure of the General Convention and of the Church. It shall, from time to time, review the operation of the several Joint Committees and Joint Commissions to determine the necessity for their continuance and the effectiveness of their functions and to bring about a co-ordination of their efforts. Whenever a proposal is made for the creation of a new Joint Committee or Joint Commission, it shall, wherever feasible, be referred to the Standing Commission on the Structure of the Church for its consideration and advice.

Standing Commission on Structure.

The Commission shall consist of twelve (12) members, three (3) of whom shall be Bishops, three (3) shall be Presbyters, and six (6) shall be Lay Persons. The members shall be appointed by the Presidents of the two Houses of the General Convention, the Bishops by the Presiding Bishop, the Presbyters and Lay Persons by the President of

How constituted.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 1.**

---

the House of Deputies, for a term of six (6) years, except that in constituting the original Commission following the enactment of this Clause one (1) Bishop, one (1) Presbyter, and two (2) Lay Persons shall be appointed for a term of three (3) years and the remaining eight (8) members for a term of six (6) years. Vacancies occurring during the intervals between meetings of the General Convention may be filled by the respective Presidents of the two Houses.

Committees,  
consultants, and  
co-ordinators.

The Commission shall elect its own Chairman and Secretary and shall have power to constitute committees and employ consultants and co-ordinators necessary to the carrying on of its work.

Expenses, how  
met.

The expenses of the Commission shall be met by appropriations by the General Convention.

Special meetings.

Sec. 3 (a). The right of calling special meetings of the General Convention shall be vested in the Bishops. The Presiding Bishop shall issue the summons for such meetings, designating the time and place thereof, with the consent, or on the requisition, of a majority of the Bishops, expressed to him in writing.

Deputies to  
special meetings.

(b). The Deputies elected to the preceding General Convention shall be the Deputies at such special meetings of the General Convention, except in those cases in which other Deputies shall have been chosen in the meantime by any of the Diocesan Conventions, and then such other Deputies shall represent in the special meeting of the General Convention the Church of the Diocese in which they have been chosen.

Vacancies, how  
supplied.

(c). Any vacancy in the representation of any Diocese caused by the death, absence, or inability of any Deputy, shall be supplied either temporarily or permanently in such manner as shall be prescribed by the Diocese, or, in the absence of any such provision, by appointment by the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese. During such periods as shall be stated in the certificate issued to him by the appointing power, the Provisional Deputy so appointed shall possess and shall be entitled to exercise the power and authority of the Deputy in place of whom he shall have been designated.

Deputies to be  
elected in year  
prior to  
Convention.

Sec. 4. All jurisdictions of this Church entitled by the Constitution or Canons to choose Deputies to the General Convention shall be required to do so not later than the year preceding the year of the General Convention for which they are chosen. Deputies of jurisdictions failing so to elect may not be seated unless permitted by ruling of the Presiding Officer.

Registrar to keep  
papers.

Sec. 5 (a). The House of Deputies, upon the nomination of the House of Bishops, shall elect a Presbyter, to be known as the Registrar of the General Convention, whose duty it shall be to receive all Journals, files, papers, reports, and other documents or articles that are, or shall become, the property of either House of the General Convention; to arrange, label, index, and put them in order, and to provide for the safe-keeping of the same in some fireproof, accessible place of deposit, and to hold the same under such regulations as the General Convention may, from time to time, provide.

Registrar to keep  
records of  
consecrations.

(b). It shall also be the duty of the said Registrar to procure a suitable book, and to enter therein the record of the ordinations and

# TITLE I

## CANON 1.

---

consecrations of all the Bishops of this Church, designating accurately the time and place of the same, with the names of the consecrating Bishops, and of others present and assisting; to have the same authenticated in the fullest manner practicable; and to take care for the similar record and authentication of all future ordinations and consecrations of Bishops in this Church. Due notice of the time and place of such ordinations and consecrations shall be given by the Presiding Bishop to the Registrar; and thereupon it shall be his duty to attend such ordinations and consecrations, either in person or by deputy.

(c). He shall prepare, in such form as the House of Bishops shall prescribe, the Letters of Ordination and Consecration in duplicate; and he shall have the same immediately signed and sealed by the ordaining and consecrating Bishops, and by such other Bishops assisting as may be practicable; and he shall deliver to the newly consecrated Bishop one of the said Letters, and shall carefully file the other among the papers in his custody, and make a minute thereof in his book of record.

Registrar to prepare Letters of Consecration.

(d). The Registrar shall also be Historiographer, unless in any case the House of Bishops shall make a separate nomination; and in this event the House of Deputies shall confirm the nomination.

Historiographer.

(e). The necessary expenses incurred under this Section shall be paid by the Treasurer of the General Convention.

Expenses of Registrar.

(f). It shall be the duty of the Secretaries of both Houses, within six months after the adjournment of the General Convention, to deliver to the Registrar the manuscript minutes of the proceedings of both Houses, together with the Journals, files, papers, reports, and all other documents of either House. The manuscript minutes of both Houses shall remain filed until after the adjournment of the second Convention following that at which such minutes shall have been taken; *Provided, however,* that any part of such minutes, for any reason unpublished in the Journal, shall remain filed in the Archives. The Secretary of the House of Deputies shall also deliver to the Registrar, when not otherwise expressly directed, all the Journals, files, papers, reports, and other documents specified in Title I, Canon 5. The Secretaries shall require the Registrar to give them receipts for the Journals and other papers delivered to him.

Journals and papers to be delivered to Registrar.

(g). In the case of a vacancy in the office of Registrar, the Presiding Bishop shall appoint a Registrar, who shall hold office until the next General Convention.

Appointment of Registrar in case of vacancy during recess.

Sec. 6 (a). The House of Deputies, upon nomination of the House of Bishops, shall elect a Recorder (who may be a natural person or an incorporated organization of this Church), whose duty it shall be to continue the List of Ordinations and to keep a list of the Clergy in regular standing.

Recorder, duties of.

(b). It shall be the duty of the Bishop, or, if there be no Bishop, of the President of the Standing Committee of every jurisdiction to forward to the Recorder on or before the first day of March in each and every year a report certifying the following information as of the thirty-first day of December in the preceding year: (1) the names of the Clergy

Information to be sent to Recorder.



**TITLE I**  
**CANON 1.**

---

canonically resident therein with their several charges: (2) the names of the Clergy licensed by the Bishop to officiate, but not yet transferred; (3) the names of all persons connected with the jurisdiction who have been ordered Deacons or Priests during the preceding twelve months, with the date and place of ordination and the name of the Bishop ordaining; (4) the names of the Clergy of the jurisdiction who have died during the preceding twelve months, with the date and place of death; (5) the names of the Clergy who have been received during the preceding twelve months, with the date of their reception and the name of the jurisdiction from which received, and, in the case of Clergy not received from a jurisdiction of this Church, the date and place of ordination and the name of the Bishop ordaining; (6) the names of the Clergy who have been transferred during the preceding twelve months, with the dates of the Letters Dimissory and of their acceptance, and the name of the jurisdiction to which transferred; (7) the names of the Clergy who have been suspended during the preceding twelve months, with the date and ground of suspension; (8) the names of the Clergy who have been removed or deposed during the preceding twelve months, with the date, place, and ground of removal or deposition; (9) the names of the Clergy who have been restored during the preceding twelve months, with the date; (10) the names of Deaconesses canonically resident therein.

Recorder to furnish information.

(c). It shall be the duty of the Recorder to furnish, upon proper authority and at the expense of the applicant, such information as may be in the possession of the Recorder, based upon the reports required under Clause (b) hereof; but in no case shall the Recorder publish, or furnish for publication, the ground of any suspension, removal, or deposition.

Exceptions.

Report of Recorder to the General Convention.

(d). The Recorder shall prepare and present to each session of the General Convention a list of all Clergy ordained, received, suspended, removed, deposed, or restored, and of all Bishops consecrated, and of all Bishops and other Clergymen who have died; such list to cover the period from the last preceding similar report of the Recorder through the thirty-first day of December immediately preceding each session of the General Convention.

Expenses of Recorder.

(e). The necessary expenses incurred under this Section by the Recorder shall be paid by the Treasurer of the General Convention.

Vacancy to be filled by Presiding Bishop.

(f). In case of a vacancy in the office of Recorder, the Presiding Bishop shall appoint a Recorder, who shall hold office until the next General Convention.

Treasurer, his duties.

Sec. 7 (a). At every regular meeting of the General Convention a Treasurer shall be elected by concurrent action of the two Houses, and shall remain in office until a successor shall be elected. It shall be his duty to receive and disburse all moneys collected under the authority of the Convention, and of which the collection and disbursement shall not otherwise be prescribed; and, with the advice and approval of the Presiding Bishop and the Treasurer of the Executive Council, to invest, from time to time, such surplus funds as he may have on hand.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 1.**

---

His account shall be rendered to the Convention at each regular meeting, and shall be audited at the direction of a committee acting under its authority.

(b). In case of a vacancy, by death, resignation, or otherwise, in the office of Treasurer of the General Convention, the Presiding Bishop and the President of the House of Deputies shall appoint a Treasurer, who shall hold office until a successor is elected. In case of temporary inability of the Treasurer to act, from illness or other cause, the same officials shall appoint an Acting Treasurer who shall perform all duties of the Treasurer until the Treasurer is able to resume them.

Vacancy, how filled.

Sec. 8. In order that the contingent expenses of the General Convention, and the stipend of the Presiding Bishop, together with the necessary expenses of his office, and the necessary expenses of the President of the House of Deputies, including the staff and Advisory Council required by him to assist him in the performance of the duties and matters relating to the office, and Church Pension Fund assessments, may be defrayed, it shall be the duty of the several Diocesan Conventions to forward to the Treasurer of the General Convention annually, on the first Monday of January, as to each Diocese a sum not greater than the diocesan levy established by the General Convention from time to time for each Bishop having jurisdiction therein, any Bishop Coadjutor, and each Suffragan Bishop in active service therein, and each retired Bishop, and each Presbyter and Deacon canonically resident therein, except that as to each Missionary Diocese and the Convocation of American Churches in Europe the amount of said levy shall be one-quarter of that applicable to other Dioceses. The number of Bishops, Presbyters, and Deacons canonically resident in each Diocese, as reported to the House of Deputies and recorded in the Journal of the General Convention last preceding, shall be the basis upon which such assessment shall be made. The amount of such assessment shall be determined by the Joint Committee on Expenses. A new Diocese not recorded in the last Journal shall furnish to the Treasurer, prior to the first day of November, a report of the number of Bishops, Presbyters, and Deacons for which such Diocese is subject to assessment, which shall be the same as in its report to the House of Deputies.

Assessment for General Convention Budget.

Sec. 9. The Treasurer of the General Convention shall have authority to borrow, in behalf and in the name of the General Convention, with the approval of the Presiding Bishop, such a sum, not exceeding twenty-five thousand dollars *per annum*, as in his judgment may be necessary to help defray the expenses of the General Convention; *Provided*, that the total amount of the indebtedness authorized in this Section shall at no time exceed fifty thousand dollars.

Treasurer may borrow.

Sec. 10. The Treasurer shall give a bond conditioned on the faithful performance of his duties. The amount thereof and the terms on which the same shall be given shall be subject to the approval of the Presiding Bishop, the expense of such bond to be paid by the General Convention.

Shall give bond.

Sec. 11. The Treasurer shall submit to the General Convention at each regular meeting thereof a detailed budget for which he proposes to

Shall submit budget.

# TITLE I

## CANONS 1, 2.

---

request appropriations for the ensuing budgetary period. He shall have power to expend all sums of money covered by this budget, subject to such provisions of the Canons as shall be applicable.

May appoint  
Assistant  
Treasurer.

Sec. 12. The Treasurer may appoint, subject to the approval of the Presiding Bishop, an Assistant Treasurer, who shall hold office during the pleasure of the Treasurer and shall perform such duties as shall be assigned to him by the Treasurer. He shall give a bond conditioned on the faithful performance of his duties. The amount thereof and the terms on which the same shall be given shall be subject to the approval of the Presiding Bishop, the expense of such bond to be paid by the General Convention.

Bond required.

### CANON 2.

#### Of the Presiding Bishop

Nominating  
Committee.

Sec. 1. Before a Presiding Bishop is elected, a Joint Nominating Committee consisting of eight Bishops (one from each Province) together with four clerical and four lay members of the House of Deputies (one member from each Province) shall present to the House of Bishops the names of three members thereof for its consideration in the choice of a Presiding Bishop.

Term of Office.

Sec. 2. The term of office of the Presiding Bishop, when elected according to the provisions of Article I., Section 3, of the Constitution, shall be twelve years, beginning twelve months after the close of the Convention at which he is elected, unless he shall attain the age of sixty-five years before his term shall have been completed; in that case he shall resign his office to the General Convention which occurs in or next after the year of his attaining such age. At that Convention his successor shall be elected, and shall assume office twelve months thereafter or immediately upon the death, retirement, or disability of the Presiding Bishop; except that when a Presiding Bishop has been elected by the House of Bishops to fill a vacancy, as provided for in the second paragraph of Article I., Section 3, of the Constitution, the Presiding Bishop so elected shall take office immediately.

To resign  
previous  
jurisdiction.

Sec. 3 (a). Upon the expiration of the term of office of the Presiding Bishop, the Bishop who is elected to succeed him shall tender to the House of Bishops his resignation of his previous jurisdiction, to take effect upon the date of his assuming the office of Presiding Bishop, or not later than six months thereafter.

(b). Such resignation shall be acted upon immediately by the House of Bishops.

Duties: Chief  
Pastor.

Sec. 4. (a). The Presiding Bishop of the Church shall be the chief pastor thereof. As such he shall

Policy and  
strategy.

(1). Be charged with responsibility for giving leadership in initiating and developing the policy and strategy of the Church;

Representative of  
Church and  
episcopate.

(2). Speak God's word to the Church and to the world, as the representative of this Church and its episcopate in its corporate capacity;

Assembly of  
Bishops.

(3). Take order for the consecration of Bishops, when duly elected; and, from time to time, assemble the Bishops of this Church to meet

# TITLE I

## CANONS 2, 3.

---

with him, either as the House of Bishops or as a Council of Bishops, and set the time and place of such meetings;

(4). Preside over meetings of the House of Bishops; and, when the two Houses of the General Convention meet in Joint Session, have the right of presiding over such Session, of calling for such Joint Session, of recommending legislation to either House and, upon due notification, of appearing before and addressing the House of Deputies; and whenever he shall address the General Convention upon the state of the Church, it shall be incumbent upon both Houses thereof to consider and act upon any recommendations contained in such address;

Presiding Officer.

(5). Visit every Diocese of this Church for the purpose of

Visitations.

- (i). Holding pastoral consultations with the Bishop or Bishops thereof and, with their advice, with the lay and clerical leaders of the jurisdiction;
- (ii). Preaching the Word; and
- (iii). Celebrating the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper.

(b). The Presiding Bishop shall report annually to the Church, and he may, from time to time, issue Pastoral Letters in his own person.

Report to Church.

(c). The Presiding Bishop shall perform such other functions as shall be prescribed in these Canons.

Sec. 5. The stipends of the Presiding Bishop and such personal assistants as may be necessary during his term of office for the effective performance of his duties, and the necessary expenses thereof, shall be fixed by the General Convention and shall be provided for in the budget to be submitted by the Treasurer, as provided in the Canon entitled, "Of the General Convention".

Sec. 6. In the event of the disability of the Presiding Bishop, the Bishop who, according to the Rules of the House of Bishops, becomes its Presiding Officer, shall be substituted for the Presiding Bishop for all the purposes of these Canons, except the Canons entitled, "Of the Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society", and "Of the Executive Council".

If Presiding Bishop is disabled.

Sec. 7 (a). At the expiration of his term of office the Presiding Bishop, and any other Bishop who shall have held the office of Presiding Bishop, shall receive a retiring allowance of six thousand dollars per year, less whatever retiring allowance they may receive from The Church Pension Fund.

Retiring allowance.

(b). Upon the acceptance of his resignation prior to the expiration of his term of office for reasons of disability, the Presiding Bishop may be granted, in addition to whatever allowance he may receive from The Church Pension Fund, a disability allowance to be paid by the Treasurer of the General Convention in an amount to be fixed by the General Convention.

Disability allowance.

### CANON 3.

#### Of the Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society

The Constitution of the said Society, which was incorporated by an act of the Legislature of the State of New York, as from time to time amended, is hereby amended and established so as to read as follows:

Constitution.

**TITLE I**  
**CANONS 3, 4.**

---

*Constitution of The Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America as established in 1821, and since amended at various times.*

- Name. ARTICLE I. This organization shall be called The Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, and shall be considered as comprehending all persons who are members of the Church.
- Board of Directors. ARTICLE II. The Executive Council, as constituted by Canon, shall be its Board of Directors, and shall adopt By-laws for its government not inconsistent with the Constitution and Canons.
- Officers. ARTICLE III. The officers of the Society shall be a President, a Vice-President, a Secretary, a Treasurer, and such Assistant Secretaries and Assistant Treasurers as may be appointed in accordance with the Canons or By-laws. The Presiding Bishop of the Church shall be the President of the Society; the Vice-President shall be the person who is the Vice-President of the Executive Council, and shall have such powers and shall perform such duties as may be assigned to him by the By-laws. The Treasurer shall be the person who is the Treasurer of the Executive Council. The Secretary shall be the person who is the Secretary of the Executive Council. The other officers of the Society shall be such as are provided for by the By-laws thereof. The tenure of office, compensation, powers, and duties of the officers of the Society shall be such as are prescribed by the Canons and by the By-laws of the Society not inconsistent therewith.
- President.  
Vice-President.  
Treasurer.  
Secretary. ARTICLE IV. This Constitution of the Society may be altered or amended at any time by the General Convention of the Church.
- Amendment.

**CANON 4.**

**Of the Executive Council**

- Function. Sec. 1 (a). There shall be an Executive Council, whose duty it shall be to carry out the program and policies adopted by the General Convention. The Executive Council shall have charge of the unification, development, and prosecution of the Missionary, Educational, and Social Work of the Church, and of such other work as may be committed to it by the General Convention.
- Accountability. (b). The Executive Council shall be accountable to the General Convention and shall render a full report concerning the work with which it is charged to each meeting of the said Convention.
- How constituted. (c). The Executive Council shall be composed (a) of thirty members elected by the General Convention, of whom six shall be Bishops, six shall be Presbyters, and eighteen shall be Lay Persons (three Bishops, three Presbyters, and nine Lay Persons to be elected by each regular meeting of the General Convention; *Provided*, that the 1970 meeting of the General Convention shall elect three Lay Persons for three-year terms in addition to nine Lay Persons for regular terms); (b) of members elected by the Provincial Synods, each Synod having the right to elect one member at the last regular meeting prior to the regular meeting of the General Convention; and (c) of the following *ex officio* members: the Presiding Bishop and the President of the House of Deputies.

# TITLE I

## CANON 4.

---

Sec. 2(a). Of the members to be elected by the General Convention, the Bishops shall be elected by the House of Bishops subject to confirmation by the House of Deputies, and the Presbyters and Lay Persons shall be elected by the House of Deputies subject to confirmation by the House of Bishops.

(b). The term of office of the members of the Council elected by the General Convention (other than *ex officio* members) shall be six years, except as otherwise provided; and the term of office of the members of the Council elected by the Provincial Synods shall be three years. The term of office of all members elected as above provided shall commence immediately upon their election and their written acceptance thereof filed with the Secretary of the Executive Council. Members shall remain in office until their successors are elected and qualified. [No person who has served at least three consecutive years on the Executive Council shall be eligible for immediate re-election for a term of more than three years. After any person shall have served six consecutive years on the Executive Council, a period of three years shall elapse before such person shall be eligible for re-election to the Council.]\*

Term of office.

Should any vacancy occur in the Council through the death or resignation of a member elected by the General Convention or through the change in status of any such member by consecration or ordination the Council shall fill such vacancy by the election of a suitable person to serve until his successor is elected by the General Convention. The General Convention shall elect a suitable person to serve the portion of any term which will remain unexpired.

Vacancies, how filled.

Should any vacancy occur in the Council through the failure of any Provincial Synod to elect a member, or through the death, resignation, or removal from the Province, of any such member, the President and Executive Council of the Province shall appoint a suitable person, canonically resident in such Province, to serve until the Provincial Synod shall by election fill the vacancy.

(c). The Council shall exercise the powers conferred upon it by Canon, and such further powers as may be designated by the General Convention, and between sessions of the General Convention may initiate and develop such new work as it may deem necessary. It may, subject to the provision of this Canon, enact By-laws for its own government and the government of its several departments.

Powers of Council.

In its capacity as the Board of Directors of The Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society, the Council shall have the power to direct the disposition of the moneys and other property of said Society in accordance with the provisions of this Canon and the orders and budgets adopted or approved by the General Convention.

Sec. 3. The Presiding Bishop shall be *ex officio* the President. The Council shall elect the Vice-Presidents, the Treasurer, and the Secretary, such elections to be upon the nomination of the President. The additional officers, agents, and employees of the Council shall be

Officers of Council.

---

\*The matter enclosed in square brackets ([ ]) becomes operative on the first day of the 1976 meeting of the General Convention.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 4.**

---

such and shall perform such duties as the Presiding Bishop and the Council may from time to time designate.

Meetings.

Sec. 4 (a). The Council shall meet at such place, and at such stated times, at least three times each year, as it shall appoint and at such other times as it may be convened. The Council shall be convened at the request of the President, or on the written request of any nine members thereof.

Quorum.

(b). A majority of the elected members of the Council shall be necessary to constitute a quorum at any meeting of the Council. No action shall be taken in the name of the Council except when a quorum, so defined, is present and voting.

Salaries.

Sec. 5 (a). With the exception of the salary of the President, the salaries of all officers of the Council and of all agents and employees of the Council shall be fixed by the Council and paid by the Treasurer.

Program Budgets  
and  
Apportionment.

Sec. 6 (a). The Council shall submit to the General Convention at each regular session thereof a program for the triennium, including a detailed budget of that part of the program for which it proposes to make appropriation for the ensuing year, and estimated budgets for the two succeeding years. In connection with the preparation of such budget the Executive Council shall, at least fifteen months before the session of the General Convention, transmit to the President of each Province a statement of its existing appropriations for the Dioceses within such Province, showing the items for which such appropriations are expended, for the purpose of obtaining the advice of the Province as to changes therein. The Synod, or Council, of each Province shall thereupon, in such manner as the Synod shall determine, consider such budget and report its findings to the Executive Council for its information. After the preparation of the budget the Executive Council shall, at least four months before the session of the General Convention, transmit to the Bishop of each Diocese a statement of the existing and the proposed appropriations for all items in the budget. The Executive Council shall also submit to the General Convention with the budget a plan for the apportionment to the respective Dioceses of the sum needed to execute the program.

Joint Sessions for  
the presentation  
of program.

(b). There shall be joint sessions of the two Houses for the presentation of such program; and thereafter consideration shall be given and appropriate action taken thereon by the General Convention. The Council shall have the power to expend all sums of money covered by the budget and estimated budgets approved by the Convention, subject to such restrictions as may be imposed by the General Convention. It shall also have power to undertake such other work provided for in the program approved by the General Convention, or other work under the jurisdiction of the Council, the need for which may have arisen after the action of the General Convention, as in the judgment of the Council its income will warrant.

Notice of allotted  
objectives to be  
given.

(c). Upon the adoption by the General Convention of a program and plan of apportionment for the ensuing triennium, the Council shall formally advise each Diocese with respect to its proportionate part of the estimated expenditure involved in the execution of the program in

**TITLE I.**  
**CANON 4.**

---

accordance with the plan of apportionment adopted by the General Convention. Such objectives shall be determined by the Council upon an equitable basis.

(d). Each Diocese shall thereupon notify each Parish and Mission of the amount of the objective allotted to such Diocese, and the amount of such objective to be raised by each Parish or Mission. Each Diocese shall present to each Parish and Mission a total objective which shall include both its share of the proposed Diocesan Budget and its share of the objective apportioned to the Diocese by the Executive Council in accordance with the plan adopted by the General Convention.

Diocese to allot objectives to Parishes.

(e). The Executive Council shall approve a standard form for use in Dioceses, for the purpose of showing receipts and the distribution of receipts for all purposes. Each Diocese shall annually report to the Executive Council all receipts and the distribution of such receipts on the standard form.

Report Form.

Sec. 7 (a). Every Missionary Bishop, or in case of a vacancy, the Bishop in charge of the jurisdiction, receiving aid from the Council, shall report at the close of each fiscal year to the Council, giving account of his work, of money received from all sources and disbursed for all purposes, and of the state of the Church in his jurisdiction at the date of such report, all in such form as the Council may prescribe.

Bishops receiving aid to report to Council.

(b). Every Bishop of a Diocese receiving aid from the Council shall report at the close of each fiscal year to the Council, giving account of the work in his Diocese supported in whole or in part by the Council.

Sec. 8. The Council, as soon as practicable after the close of each fiscal year, shall make and publish a full report of its work to the Church. Such report shall contain an itemized statement of all receipts and disbursements and a statement of all trust funds and other property of The Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society, and of all other trust funds and property in its possession or under its control. The Council shall make a like report, including a detailed schedule of the salaries paid to all officers, agents, and principal employees, to each General Convention.

Reports of the Council.

Sec. 9 (a). Ordained Ministers and lay Communicants of this Church, or of some Church in communion with this Church, in good standing, who qualify in accordance with the standards and procedures adopted from time to time by the Executive Council, shall be eligible for appointment as Missionaries of this Church.

Qualifications of Missionaries.

(b). Members in good standing of Churches not in communion with this Church, but otherwise qualified as above, may, at the request of the Ecclesiastical Authority of the jurisdiction in which the requirement exists, be employed and assigned to positions for which they are professionally prepared; and may receive the same stipends and other allowances as appointed Missionaries. The Ecclesiastical Authority of a jurisdiction may employ any qualified person for work in the jurisdiction.

Employment of non-communicants.

a) Professionals.  
b) Others.

Sec. 10. All Canons or parts of Canons inconsistent with the provisions of this Canon are hereby repealed.

---



**TITLE I**  
**CANON 5.**

---

**CANON 5.**

**Of the Mode of Securing an Accurate View of the State of this Church**

Ministers to  
make annual  
reports to Bishop.

Sec. 1. A report of every Parish and other Congregation of this Church shall be prepared annually for the year ending December 31st preceding, upon the blank form prepared by the Executive Council and approved by the Committee on the State of the Church, and shall be sent in duplicate not later than February 1st to the Bishop of the Diocese, or, where there is no Bishop, to the Secretary of the Diocese. The Bishop or the Secretary, as the case may be, shall send the duplicate copy to the Executive Council not later than March 1st. In every Parish the preparation and delivery of this report shall be the joint duty of the Rector and Vestry; and in every other Congregation the duty of the Minister in charge thereof. This report shall include the following information: (1) the number of baptisms, confirmations, marriages, and burials during the year; the total number of baptized persons and communicants in good standing at the time of the report; and for all purposes the number of members of this Church shall be deemed to be the number of baptized persons; (2) a summary of all the receipts and expenditures, from whatever source derived and for whatever purpose used; (3) a statement of the property held by the Parish, whether real or personal, with an appraisal of its value, together with a statement of the indebtedness of the Parish, if any, and of the amount of insurance carried; and (4) such other relevant information as is needed to secure an accurate view of the state of this Church, as required by the approved form. And every Minister not in charge of any Parish or Congregation shall also report his occasional services, and if there have been none, the causes or reasons which have prevented the same. And these reports, or such parts of them as the Bishop may deem proper, shall be entered in the Journal.

Information to be  
included.

Non-parochial  
clergy to report.

Annual Diocesan  
Reports.

Sec. 2. Likewise, a report of every Diocese shall be prepared annually for the year ending December 31st preceding, upon the blank form prepared by the Executive Council and approved by the Committee on the State of the Church, and shall be sent, not later than February 1st, to the Executive Council. The report shall include statistical information concerning the parishes and missions of the Diocese, the clergy and other ministries, and the institutions in any way connected with said Diocese; together with the financial information required by Title I, Canon 4, Section 6 (e).

Journals of  
Diocesan  
Conventions to  
be sent to  
Secretary of the  
General  
Convention by  
Secretaries.

Sec. 3(a). It shall be the duty of the Secretary of the Convention or Convocation of every jurisdiction to forward to the Secretary of the House of Deputies, immediately upon publication, five copies of the Journals of the Convention or Convocation of the jurisdiction, together with episcopal charges, statements, and such other papers as may show the state of the Church in his jurisdiction.

Committee on  
the State of the  
Church.

(b). A Committee of the House of Deputies shall be appointed following the close of each General Convention, to serve *ad interim*, and to prepare and present to the next meeting of the House of Deputies a report on the State of the Church; which report, when agreed to by the said House, shall be sent to the House of Bishops.

# TITLE I

## CANON 6.

---

### CANON 6.

#### Of Business Methods in Church Affairs

Sec. 1. In every Diocese, Parish, Mission, and Institution, connected with this Church, the following standard business methods shall be observed:

Standard methods prescribed.

(1). Trust and permanent funds and all securities of whatsoever kind shall be deposited with a Federal or State Bank, or a Diocesan Corporation, or with some other agency approved in writing by the Finance Committee or the Department of Finance of the Diocese, under either a deed of trust or an agency agreement, providing for at least two signatures on any order of withdrawal of such funds or securities.

Deposit of funds.

But this paragraph shall not apply to funds and securities refused by the depositories named as being too small for acceptance. Such small funds and securities shall be under the care of the persons or corporations properly responsible for them.

Proviso.

(2). Records shall be made and kept of all trust and permanent funds showing at least the following:

Record of trust funds.

- (a) Source and date.
- (b) Terms governing the use of principal and income.
- (c) To whom and how often reports of condition are to be made.
- (d) How the funds are invested.

(3). Treasurers and custodians, other than banking institutions, shall be adequately bonded; except treasurers of funds that do not exceed five hundred dollars at any one time during the fiscal year.

Treasurers to be bonded.

(4). Books of account shall be so kept as to provide the basis for satisfactory accounting.

Books of account and audits.

(5). All accounts shall be audited annually by a Certified or Independent Public Accountant, or by such an accounting agency as shall be permitted by the Finance Committee or Department of Finance of the Diocese.

A certificate of audit shall be forwarded to the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority not later than July 1 of each year, covering the financial reports of the previous calendar year.

(6). All buildings and their contents shall be kept adequately insured.

Adequate insurance.

(7). The Finance Committee or Department of Finance of the Diocese may require copies of any or all accounts described in this Section to be filed with it and shall report annually to the Convention of the Diocese upon its administration of this Canon.

Report to Convention.

(8). The fiscal year shall begin January 1.

Fiscal year.

Sec. 2. The several Dioceses shall give effect to the foregoing standard business methods by the enactment of Canons appropriate thereto, which Canons shall invariably provide for a Finance Committee or a Department of Finance of the Diocese.

Dioceses to enforce by Canon.

Sec. 3. No Vestry, Trustee, or other Body, authorized by Civil or Canon law to hold, manage, or administer real property for any Parish, Mission, Congregation, or Institution, shall encumber or alienate the same or any part thereof without the written consent of

Encumbrance of property requires consent of Bishop and Standing Committee.

# TITLE I

## CANONS 6, 7.

---

the Bishop and Standing Committee of the Diocese of which the Parish, Mission, Congregation, or Institution is a part, except under such regulations as may be prescribed by Canon of the Diocese.

### CANON 7.

#### Of The Church Pension Fund.

Authorized to administer pension system.

Sec. 1. The Church Pension Fund, a corporation created by Chapter 97 of the Laws of the State of New York as subsequently amended, is hereby authorized to establish and administer the clergy pension system, including life, accident, and health benefits, of this Church substantially in accordance with the principles adopted by the General Convention of 1913 and approved thereafter by the several Dioceses, with the view of providing for the clergy disabled by age or other infirmity and for the widows and minor children of deceased clergy.

Trustees, how elected.

Sec. 2. The General Convention at each regular meeting shall elect, on the nomination of a Joint Committee thereof, twelve persons to serve as Trustees of The Church Pension Fund for a term of six years and until their successors shall have been elected and have qualified, and shall also fill such vacancies as may exist on the Board of Trustees; except that at the meeting held in the year 1970, the General Convention shall elect four persons to serve for a term of three years and four persons to serve for a term of six years. Any person elected after the date of this amendment may serve not more than two consecutive six-year terms. Any vacancy which occurs at a time when the General Convention is not in session may be filled by the Board of Trustees by appointment, *ad interim*, of a Trustee who shall serve until the next session of the General Convention thereafter shall have elected a Trustee to serve for the remainder of the unexpired term pertaining to such vacancy.

Nothing in this section shall be construed as prohibiting any Trustee elected before it was amended as herein set forth from serving the full term for which he was elected or from being subsequently elected or re-elected as a Trustee under the provisions hereof.

Royalties.

Sec. 3. For the purpose of administering the pension system, The Church Pension Fund shall be entitled to receive and to use all net royalties from publications authorized by the General Convention, and to levy upon and to collect from all Parishes, Missions, and other ecclesiastical organizations or bodies subject to the authority of this Church, and any other societies, organizations, or bodies in the Church which under the regulations of The Church Pension Fund shall elect to come into the pension system, assessments based upon the salaries and other compensation paid to clergymen by such Parishes, Missions, and other ecclesiastical organizations or bodies for services rendered currently or in the past, prior to their becoming beneficiaries of the Fund.

Assessments.

Limit on allotment.

Sec. 4. The pension system shall be so administered that no pension shall be allotted before there shall be in the hands of The Church Pension Fund sufficient funds to meet such pension, except as directed by the General Convention in 1967.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 7.**

---

Sec. 5. To every clergyman who, at an age which The Church Pension Fund shall ascertain and determine to be the normal age of ordination, shall be ordained in this Church or received into this Church from another Church, and who shall remain in continuous service in the office and work of the Ministry in this Church, and in respect of whom the conditions of this Canon shall have been fulfilled in the payment of assessments on such reasonable basis as The Church Pension Fund may establish under its Rules of administration, The Church Pension Fund shall make a retiring allowance of at least six hundred dollars a year, and shall also make widows' and minor orphans' allowances related thereto. In the case of a clergyman who at the time of his ordination or reception shall be older than such normal age of ordination or in whose behalf assessments shall not have been continuously and fully paid, The Church Pension Fund shall determine his retiring allowance and the allowance to his widow and minor children, upon fulfillment of the other conditions of this Canon, at a rate consistent with proper actuarial practice. The Trustees of The Church Pension Fund are hereby empowered to establish such Rules and Regulations as will fulfill the intention of this Canon and are consistent with sound actuarial practice. Subject to the provisions of this Canon, the general principle shall be observed that there shall be an actuarial relation between the several assessments and the several benefits; *Provided, however,* that the Board of Trustees shall have power to establish such maximum of annuities greater than two thousand dollars as shall be in the best interests of the Church, within the limits of sound actuarial practice.

To every Clergyman in continuous service.

Minimum Pension.

Retiring Allowance.

Empowered to establish Rules.

Maximum Pension.

Sec. 6. An Initial Reserve Fund, derived from voluntary gifts, shall be administered by The Church Pension Fund so as to assure to clergy ordained prior to March 1, 1917, and their families such addition to the support to which they may become entitled on the basis of assessments authorized by this Canon as may bring their several allowances up to the scale herein established.

Initial Reserve Fund.

Sec. 7. The action of the Trustees of the General Clergy Relief Fund in accepting the provisions of Chapter 239 of the Laws of 1915 of the State of New York, authorizing a merger with The Church Pension Fund, upon terms agreed upon between said two Funds, is hereby approved. Any corporation, society, or other organization which hitherto has administered clergy relief funds, may to such extent as may be compatible with its corporate powers and its existing obligations, and in so far as may be sanctioned in the case of diocesan societies by the respective Dioceses, merge with The Church Pension Fund, or if merger be impracticable, may establish by agreement with The Church Pension Fund the closest practicable system of co-operation with that fund. Nothing herein contained shall be construed to the prejudice of existing corporations or societies whose funds are derived from payments made by members thereof.

Merger of General Clergy Relief Fund with Church Pension Fund.

Sec. 8. The General Convention reserves the power to alter or amend this Canon, but no such alteration or amendment shall be made until after the same shall have been communicated to the Trustees of The Church Pension Fund and such Trustees shall have had ample opportunity to be heard with respect thereto.

General Convention reserves the right to amend this Canon.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 8.**

---

**CANON 8.**

**Of Provinces**

How constituted.

Sec. 1. Subject to the proviso in Article VII. of the Constitution, the Dioceses of this Church shall be and are hereby united into Provinces as follows:

The First Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

The Second Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of New York and New Jersey, and the Missionary Diocese of Haiti.

The Third Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, West Virginia, and the District of Columbia.

The Fourth Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Tennessee, and Kentucky.

The Fifth Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

The Sixth Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Minnesota, Iowa, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Montana, Wyoming, and Colorado.

The Seventh Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Missouri, Arkansas, Texas, Kansas, Oklahoma, and New Mexico.

The Eighth Province shall consist of the Dioceses within the States of Idaho, Utah, Washington, Oregon, Nevada, California, Arizona, Alaska, and Hawaii, and the Dioceses of this Church in the Philippines and Taiwan.

The Ninth Province shall consist of the Dioceses of this Church in Colombia, Costa Rica, the Dominican Republic, Ecuador, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, Mexico, Nicaragua, Panama and the Canal Zone, and Puerto Rico.

In case new Diocese or Missionary Diocese be created.

Sec. 2. When a new Diocese shall be created wholly within any Province, such new Diocese shall be included in such Province. In case a new Diocese shall embrace territory in two or more Provinces, it shall be included in and form a part of the Province wherein the greater number of Presbyters and Deacons in such new Diocese shall at the time of its creation be canonically resident. Whenever a new Diocese shall be formed of territory not before included in any Diocese, the General Convention shall designate the Province to which it shall be annexed.

Synodical rights and privileges.

Sec. 3. For the purpose of the Province the Synodical rights and privileges of the several Dioceses within the Province shall be such as from time to time shall be determined by the Synod of the Province.

Provincial Synod.

Sec. 4. There shall be in each Province a Synod consisting of a House of Bishops and a House of Deputies, which Houses shall sit and deliberate either separately or together.

Bishops have seat and vote.

Sec. 5. Every Bishop of this Church, having jurisdiction within the Province, every Bishop Coadjutor and Suffragan Bishop, and every

# TITLE I

## CANON 8.

---

Bishop whose episcopal work has been within the Province, but who by reason of advanced age or bodily infirmity has resigned, shall have a seat and vote in the House of Bishops of the Province.

Sec. 6. The President of each Province shall be one of the Bishops of the Province, elected by the Synod by the concurrent vote of the three orders and by a plurality in each order. He shall hold office for such term as the Synod may determine.

President of Province.

Sec. 7. Each Diocese within the Province shall be entitled to representation in the Provincial House of Deputies by Presbyters, canonically resident in the Diocese, and Lay Persons, communicants of this Church having domicile in the Diocese, in such number as the Provincial Synod, by Ordinance, may provide. Each Diocese shall determine the manner in which its Deputies shall be chosen.

Representatives of Dioceses.

Sec. 8. The Provincial Synod shall have power: (1) to enact Ordinances for its own regulation and government; (2) to elect judges of the Provincial Court of Review; (3) to perform such duties as may be committed to it by the General Convention; (4) to deal with all matters within the Province; *Provided, however,* that no Provincial Synod shall have power to regulate or control the internal policy or affairs of any constituent Diocese; and *Provided, further,* that all actions and proceedings of the Synod shall be subject to and in conformity with the provisions of the Constitution and the Canons for the government of this Church; (5) to adopt a budget for the maintenance of any Provincial work undertaken by the Synod, such budget to be raised in such manner as the Synod may determine; (6) to create by Ordinance a Provincial Council with power to administer and carry on such work as may be committed to it by the General Convention, or by the Presiding Bishop and the Executive Council, or by the Synod of the Province.

Powers of Provincial Synod.

Sec. 9. The Synod of a Province may take over from the Executive Council, with its consent, and during its pleasure, the administration of any given work within the Province. If the Province shall provide the funds for such work, the constituent Dioceses then members of and supporting such Province shall receive proportional credit therefor upon the quotas assigned to them for the support of the Program of the Church, provided that the total amount of such credits shall not exceed the sum appropriated in the budget of the Executive Council for the maintenance of the work so taken over.

May take over administration of work.

Sec. 10. Within sixty days after each session of the General Convention, the Presidents of the two Houses thereof shall refer to the Provincial Synods, or any of them, such subjects as the General Convention may direct, or as they may deem advisable, for consideration thereof by the Synods, and it shall be the duty of such Synods to consider the subject or subjects so referred to them at the first meeting of the Synod held after the adjournment of the General Convention, and to report their action and judgment in the matter to the Secretary of the House of Bishops and to the Secretary of the House of Deputies at least six months before the date of the meeting of the next General Convention.

To consider subjects referred by General Convention.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 9.**

---

**CANON 9.**

**Of New Dioceses**

Primary  
Convention.

Sec. 1. Whenever a new Diocese shall be formed within the limits of any Diocese, or by the junction of two or more Dioceses, or parts of Dioceses, and such action shall have been ratified by the General Convention, the Bishop of the Diocese within the limits of which a Diocese is formed, or in case of the junction of two or more Dioceses, or parts of Dioceses, the senior Bishop by consecration, shall thereupon call the Primary Convention of the new Diocese, for the purpose of enabling to organize, and shall fix the time and place of holding the same, such place being within the territorial limits of the new Diocese.

How called when  
there is no  
Bishop.

Sec. 2. In case there should be no Bishop who can call such Primary Convention, pursuant to the foregoing provision, then the duty of calling such Convention for the purpose of organizing and of fixing the time and place of its meeting, shall be vested in the Standing Committee of the Diocese within the limits of which the new one is erected, or in the Standing Committee of the oldest of the Dioceses by the junction of which, or of parts of which, the new Diocese may be formed. And such Standing Committee shall make the call immediately after ratification of the General Convention.

In case of  
division of  
existing Diocese.

Sec. 3. Whenever one Diocese is about to be divided into two Dioceses, the Convention of such Diocese shall declare which portion thereof is to be the new Diocese, and shall make the same known to the General Convention before the ratification of such division.

How admitted  
into union with  
General  
Convention.

Sec. 4. Whenever a new Diocese shall have organized in Primary Convention in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution and Canons in such case made and provided, and in the manner prescribed in the previous Sections of this Canon, and shall have chosen a name and acceded to the Constitution of the General Convention in accordance with Article V., Section 1, of the Constitution, and shall have laid before the General Convention certified copies of the Constitution adopted at its Primary Convention, and the proceedings preparatory to the formation of the proposed new Diocese, such new Diocese shall thereupon be admitted into union with the General Convention.

Convocation may  
elect Deputies  
and Bishop.

Sec. 5. In the event of the erection of an Area Mission into a Diocese of this Church, as provided in Art. V. Sec. 1, the Convocation of the said Area Mission shall be entitled to elect Deputies to the succeeding General Convention, and also to elect a Bishop. The jurisdiction previously assigned to the Bishop in the Area Mission shall be terminated upon the admission of the new Diocese.

Provision for  
reunion of  
Dioceses.

Sec. 6. (a). When a Diocese, and another Diocese which has been formed either by division therefrom or by erection into a Diocese of a Missionary Diocese formed by division therefrom, shall desire to be reunited into one Diocese, the proposed reunion must be initiated by a mutual agreement between the Conventions of the two Dioceses, consented to by the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese. If the said agreement is made and the consents given more than three

**TITLE I**  
**CANONS 9, 10.**

---

months before the next meeting of the General Convention, the fact of the agreement and consents shall be certified by the Ecclesiastical Authority and the Secretary of the Convention of each Diocese to all the Bishops of the Church having jurisdiction and to the Standing Committees of all the Dioceses; and when the consents of a majority of such Bishops and of a majority of the Standing Committees to the proposed reunion shall have been received, the facts shall be similarly certified to the Secretary of the House of Deputies of the General Convention, and thereupon the reunion shall be considered complete. But if the agreement is made and the consents given within three months of the next meeting of the General Convention, the facts shall be certified instead to the Secretary of the House of Deputies, who shall lay them before the two Houses; and the reunion shall be deemed to be complete when it shall have been sanctioned by a majority vote in the House of Bishops, and in the House of Deputies voting by orders.

(b). The Bishop of the parent Diocese shall be the Bishop, and the Bishop of the junior Diocese shall be the Bishop Coadjutor, of the reunited Diocese; but if there be a vacancy in the Episcopate of either Diocese, the Bishop of the other Diocese shall be the Bishop, and the Bishop Coadjutor if there be one shall be the Bishop Coadjutor, of the reunited Diocese.

Rights and jurisdictions of Bishops.

(c). When the reunion of the two Dioceses shall have been completed, the facts shall be certified to the Presiding Bishop and to the Secretary of the House of Deputies. Thereupon the Presiding Bishop shall notify the Secretary of the House of Bishops of any alteration in the status or style of the Bishop or Bishops concerned, and the Secretary of the House of Deputies shall strike the name of the junior Diocese from the roll of Dioceses in union with the General Convention.

**CANON 10.**

**Of Missionary Jurisdictions.**

Sec. 1. Area Missions established in accordance with Article VI., Sec. 1 and Missionary Dioceses organized in accordance with Article VI., Sec. 3 shall constitute jurisdictions for which this Church as a whole assumes a special responsibility.

Area Missions special responsibility of whole Church.

Sec. 2(a). The House of Bishops may establish a Mission in any Area not included within the boundaries of a Diocese of this Church, or of a Church in communion with this Church, under such conditions and agreements, not inconsistent with the Constitution and Canons of this Church, as shall be approved by the House of Bishops from time to time.

House of Bishops may establish Area Missions.

(b). Such Area Mission may be undertaken under the sole auspices of this Church, or it may be undertaken jointly with another Christian body or bodies, on such terms as shall not compromise the doctrines of the Christian faith as this Church has received the same.

Area Missions may be undertaken ecumenically.

(c). For every such Area Mission, a Bishop of this Church, or of a Church in communion with this Church, shall be assigned by the House of Bishops to give episcopal oversight. If the person so assigned be a Bishop of this Church he shall, for the duration of such

Bishop to be assigned by House of Bishops to have oversight of Area Missions.



# TITLE I

## CANON 10.

---

Bishop assigned to function as Missionary Bishop.

May appoint Board of clergymen and lay persons.

May authorize forms of worship as appropriate.

Area Mission may be terminated by House of Bishops.

Area Mission may be organized as Missionary Diocese.

Missionary Dioceses to be governed by Constitution and Canons adopted by its Convention.

Annual Convention in every Missionary Diocese. How composed. Standing Committee to be elected.

Deputies and Alternate Deputies to General Convention to be elected.

Provincial Deputies.

Annual budget and program.

Requests for grants in aid.

Election of Bishop.

assignment, exercise jurisdiction as a Missionary Bishop under these Canons, so far as they are applicable to the Area Mission; and should occasion arise for the function of a Standing Committee or a Commission on Ministry, he shall appoint a board or boards of clergymen and lay persons resident in the area, to fulfil such functions as may be required.

(d). Except as may be expressly provided otherwise in the agreements referred to in paragraph (a) of this Section, the Bishop having jurisdiction in an Area Mission may authorize the use of such forms of worship as he may judge appropriate to the circumstances.

(e). An Area Mission may be terminated by the House of Bishops as a mission of this Church; or it may be transferred by them to become a mission of another Church, or to become a constituent part of an autonomous Province in communion with this Church; or it may organize itself as an extra-provincial Diocese.

Sec. 3(a). An Area not previously organized as a Diocese, and not under the permanent jurisdiction of a Bishop in communion with this Church, may, upon application for admission, in accordance with the procedures of Article V. Section 1, be admitted as a Diocese, and may be accepted as a Missionary Diocese within the meaning of Sec. 1 of this Canon. Such Missionary Diocese, and every present Missionary Diocese organized by the House of Bishops under previously existing Canons and admitted into union with the General Convention, shall be governed by a Constitution and Canons, adopted by the Convention of the said Diocese, which acknowledge the authority of the Constitution and Canons of the General Convention, and incorporate the provisions set forth in the subsequent paragraphs of this section.

(b). In every Missionary Diocese there shall be an annual Convention, composed of the Bishop or Bishops, the other Clergy of the Diocese, and Lay Delegates from the organized Congregations. Such Convention shall elect a Standing Committee, in accordance with the diocesan Canons, which shall have the powers and duties set forth for Standing Committees in Canon I.11 and in other Canons of the General Convention.. It shall also elect Clerical and Lay Deputies and Alternate Deputies to the General Convention, in accordance with its diocesan Canons, and the provisions of Article I.4 of the Constitution. If the Missionary Diocese is a member of a Province of this Church, it shall also provide for Clerical and Lay Deputies and alternate Deputies to the Synod, in accordance with the diocesan Canons and the provisions of the Ordinances of the Province.

(c). The Convention of a Missionary Diocese shall also adopt an annual budget and program for the Diocese, and provide for the means of its administration throughout the year; and shall make provision for the review and approval of requests for grants in aid from the Executive Council or other sources of funds, both toward current operations and for capital needs.

(d). The election of the Bishop of a Missionary Diocese, in the event of a vacancy, or, when canonical consent is given, the election of a person to be Bishop Coadjutor or Suffragan Bishop, shall be made by a Diocesan Convention in accordance with its own Canons, and the provisions of Canons III.14 and III.15 of the General Convention.

**TITLE I**  
**CANONS 10, 11.**

---

(e). At the request of the Convention of a Missionary Diocese, supported by the presentation of relevant facts and a feasible plan, the General Convention may by joint Resolution (1) grant autonomy to the said Diocese as an extra-provincial Diocese, or (2) transfer it to another autonomous Province or Regional Council of Churches in communion with this Church.

General Convention may grant Missionary Diocese autonomy.

May transfer to another autonomous Province or Regional Council.

(f). At the request of the Convention of a Missionary Diocese, accompanied by the Bishop's written resignation of his permanent jurisdiction therein, the General Convention may alter the status of a Missionary Diocese to that of an Area Mission, under such terms and conditions as may be stipulated by the House of Bishops in accordance with Canon I.10.2(a); and in such case, its right to representation by Deputies in the General Convention and the Provincial Synod shall cease.

Status of Missionary Diocese may be altered to Area Mission.

Sec. 4. Notice shall be sent to all Archbishops and Metropolitans, and all Presiding Bishops, of Churches in communion with this Church, of the establishment of any Area Mission, or of the organization or change of status of any Missionary Diocese outside the United States; and of the consecration, or assignment, of a Missionary Bishop therefor.

Notices to be sent to Primates.

It is hereby declared as the judgment of this Church that no two Bishops of Churches in communion with each other should exercise jurisdiction in the same place; except as may be defined by a concordat adopted jointly by the competent authority of each of the said Churches, after consultation with the appropriate inter-Anglican body.

Two Bishops of Churches in communion not to exercise jurisdiction in same place.

Exception.

**CANON 11.**

**Of Standing Committees**

Sec. 1. In every Diocese the Standing Committee shall elect from their own body a President and a Secretary. They may meet in conformity with their own rules from time to time, and shall keep a record of their proceedings; and the President may summon a special meeting whenever he may deem it necessary. They shall be summoned on the requisition of the Bishop, whenever he shall desire their advice; and they may meet of their own accord and agreeably to their own rules when they may be disposed to advise the Bishop.

Meetings.

Sec. 2. In all cases in which a Canon of the General Convention directs a duty to be performed, or a power to be exercised, by a Standing Committee, or by the Clerical members thereof, or by any other body consisting of several members, a majority of said members, the whole having been duly cited to meet, shall be a quorum; and a majority of the quorum so convened shall be competent to act, unless the contrary is expressly required by the Canon.

Quorum.

Majority of a quorum competent to act.

Sec. 3. When it is certified to the Presiding Bishop by at least three reputable physicians who shall have examined the case, that the Bishop of any Diocese is incapable of authorizing the Bishop Coadjutor, if there be one, or a Suffragan Bishop, if there be one, or the Standing Committee, to act as the Ecclesiastical Authority, then upon the advice of five Bishops of the neighboring Dioceses, to be selected by the Presiding Bishop, the Bishop Coadjutor, if there be

Procedure as to Ecclesiastical Authority in case of disability of the Bishop.

**TITLE I**

**CANONS 11, 12, 13.**

---

one, or a Suffragan Bishop, if there be one, and if the Constitution and Canons of the Diocese so provide, or the Standing Committee, shall be declared by the Presiding Bishop to be the Ecclesiastical Authority for all purposes set forth in these Canons, and shall retain such authority until such time as, acting upon a like certificate, the Presiding Bishop shall declare the said Bishop competent to perform his official duties.

**CANON 12.**

**Of Parishes and Congregations**

Congregation to belong to Diocese where its place of worship is situated.

Sec. 1. Every Congregation of this Church shall belong to the Church in the Diocese in which its place of worship is situated; and no Minister having a Parish or Cure in more than one jurisdiction shall have a seat in the Convention of any jurisdiction other than that in which he has canonical residence.

No Minister shall have a seat in more than one Convention.

Parish boundaries.

Sec. 2 (a). The ascertainment and defining of the boundaries of existing Parishes or Parochial Cures, as well as the establishment of a new Parish or Congregation, and the formation of a new Parish within the limits of any other Parish, is left to the action of the several Diocesan Conventions.

Formation of new Parish within limits of existing Parish.

(b). Until a Canon or other regulation of a Diocesan Convention shall have been adopted, the formation of new Parishes, or the establishment of new Parishes or Congregations within the limits of existing Parishes, shall be vested in the Bishop of the Diocese, acting by and with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee thereof, and, in case of there being no Bishop, in the Ecclesiastical Authority.

Parish boundaries when not defined by law.

Sec. 3 (a). Where Parish boundaries are not defined by law, or settled by Diocesan Authority under Section 2 of this Canon, or are not otherwise settled, they shall be defined by the civil divisions of the State as follows:

Parochial boundaries shall be the limits as fixed by law, of a village, town, township, incorporated borough, city, or of some division of any such civil district, which may be recognized by the Bishop, acting with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, as constituting the boundaries of a Parish.

Parochial Cure.

(b). If there be but one Church or Congregation within the limits of such village, town, township, borough, city, or such division of a civil district, as herein provided, the same shall be deemed the Parochial Cure of the Minister having charge thereof. If there be two or more Churches or Congregations therein, it shall be deemed the Cure of the Ministers thereof.

Not to affect legal rights.

(c). This Canon shall not affect the legal rights of property of any Parish or Congregation.

**CANON 13.**

**Of Parish Vestries**

Regulations left to State or Diocesan law.

Sec. 1. In every Parish of this Church the number, mode of election, and term of office of Wardens and Vestrymen, with the qualifications

**TITLE I**  
**CANONS 13, 14.**

---

of voters, shall be such as the State or Diocesan law may permit or require, and the Wardens and Vestrymen elected under such law shall hold office until their successors are elected and have qualified.

Sec. 2. Except as provided by the law of the State or of the Diocese, the Vestry shall be agents and legal representatives of the Parish in all matters concerning its corporate property and the relations of the Parish to its Clergy.

The agents and legal representatives.

Sec. 3. Unless it conflict with the law as aforesaid, the Rector, when present, shall preside in all the meetings of the Vestry.

The Rector to preside.

**CANON 14.**

**Of Congregations in Foreign Lands**

Sec. 1. It shall be lawful, under the conditions hereinafter stated, to organize a Congregation in any foreign land, other than Great Britain and Ireland, and the colonies and dependencies thereof, and not within the jurisdiction of any Missionary Bishop of this Church.

Congregations in foreign lands.

Sec. 2. The Bishop in charge of such Congregations and the Council of Advice hereinafter provided for, may authorize any Presbyter of this Church to officiate temporarily at any place to be named by them within any such foreign land, upon being satisfied that it is expedient to establish at such place a Congregation of this Church.

Who may officiate temporarily.

Sec. 3. Such Presbyter, after having publicly officiated at such place on four consecutive Sundays, may give notice, in the time of Divine Service, that a meeting of the persons of full age and attending the services, will be held, at a time and place to be named by the Presbyter in charge, to organize the Congregation. The said meeting may proceed to effect an organization subject to the approval of the said Bishop and Council of Advice and in conformity to such regulations as the said Council of Advice may provide.

Organization of a Congregation.

Sec. 4. Before being taken under the direction of the General Convention of this Church, such Congregation shall be required, in its Constitution, or Plan, or Articles of Organization, to recognize and accede to the Constitution, Canons, Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church, and to agree to submit to and obey such directions as may be, from time to time, received from the Bishop in charge and Council of Advice.

Congregation to recognize Constitution and Canons.

Sec. 5. The desire of such Congregation to be taken under the direction of the General Convention shall be duly certified by the Minister, one Warden, and two Vestrymen or Trustees of said Congregation, duly elected.

Desire to be received by General Convention to be certified.

Sec. 6. Such certificate, and the Constitution, Plan, or Articles of Organization, shall be submitted to the General Convention, if it be in session, or to the Presiding Bishop at any other time; and in case the same are found satisfactory, the Secretary of the House of Deputies of the General Convention, under written instruction from the Presiding Bishop, shall thereupon place the name of the Congregation on the list of Congregations in foreign lands under the direction of the General Convention; and a certificate of the said official action shall be forwarded to and filed by the Registrar of this Church. Such

How accepted.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 14.**

---

Congregations are placed under the government and jurisdiction of the Presiding Bishop.

Presiding Bishop  
may assign  
jurisdiction.

Sec. 7. The Presiding Bishop may, from time to time, by written commission under his own signature and seal, assign to a Bishop or Bishops of this Church or of a Church in communion with this Church, the care of, and responsibility for, one or more of such Congregations and the ministers officiating therein, for such period of time as he may deem expedient; *Provided* that, should such term expire in a year during which a General Convention is to be held, prior to said Convention, the commission may be extended until the adjournment of the Convention.

Sec. 8. Nothing in this Canon is to be construed as preventing the election of a Bishop to have charge of such Congregations under the provision of Canon III. 16.

Council of  
Advice and its  
function.

Sec. 9. To aid the Presiding Bishop or the Bishop in charge of these foreign Churches in administering the affairs of the same, and in settling such questions as may, by means of their peculiar situation, arise, a Council of Advice, consisting of four Clergymen and four Laymen, shall be constituted as follows, and shall act as a Council of Advice to the Bishop in charge of the foreign Churches. They shall be chosen to serve for two years and until their successors are elected and have accepted election, by a Convocation duly convened, of all the Clergy of the foreign Churches or Chapels, and of two Lay representatives of each Church or Chapel, chosen by its Vestry or Committee. The Council of Advice shall be convened on the requisition of the Bishop whenever he may desire their advice, and they may meet of their own accord and agreeably to their own rules when they may wish to advise the Bishop. When a meeting is not practicable, the Bishop may ascertain their mind by letter.

It shall be lawful for the Presiding Bishop at any time to authorize by writing under his hand and seal the Council of Advice to act as the Ecclesiastical Authority.

Ministers charged  
with canonical  
offense.

Sec. 10. In case a Minister in charge of a Congregation in a foreign land shall be accused of any offense under the Canons of this Church, it shall be the duty of the Bishop in charge of such Congregations to summon the Council of Advice, and cause an inquiry to be instituted as to the truth of such accusation; and should there be reasonable grounds for believing the same to be true, the said Bishop and the Council of Advice shall appoint a Commission, consisting of three Ministers and two Laymen, whose duty it shall be to meet in the place where the accused resides, and to obtain all the evidence in the case from the parties interested; they shall give to the accused all rights under the Canons of this Church which can be exercised in a foreign land. The judgment of the said Commission, solemnly made, shall then be sent to the Bishop in charge, and to the Presiding Bishop, and, if approved by them, shall be carried into effect; *Provided*, that no such Commission shall recommend any other discipline than admonition or removal from his charge of Minister of said Congregation. Should the result of the inquiry of the aforesaid Commission reveal evidence tending, in their judgment, to show that said Minister deserves a severer discipline, all the documents in the case shall be placed in the

Proviso.

**TITLE I**  
**CANONS 14, 15, 16.**

---

hands of the Presiding Bishop, who may proceed against the said Minister, as far as possible, according to the Canons of the General Convention.

Sec. 11. If there be a Congregation within the limits of any city in a foreign land, no new Congregation shall be established in that city, except with the consent of the Bishop in charge and the Council of Advice.

Formation of new  
Congregations.

Sec. 12. In case of a difference between the Minister and a Congregation in a foreign land, the Bishop in charge shall duly examine the same, and the said Bishop shall, with the Council of Advice, have full power to settle and adjust such difference upon principles recognized in the Canons of the General Convention.

Differences  
between Minister  
and  
Congregation.

Sec. 13. No Minister shall be allowed to take charge of a Congregation in a foreign land, organized under this Canon, until he shall have been nominated by the Vestry thereof, or, if there be no Vestry, by the Council of Advice, and approved by the Bishop in charge, and when such appointment shall have been accepted by the Minister so appointed, he shall be transferred to the jurisdiction of the Presiding Bishop.

Ministers, how  
appointed.

**CANON 15.**

**Of Clergy and Congregations Seeking Affiliation with this Church.**

Sec. 1. Whenever a congregation of Christian people, holding the Christian faith as set forth in the Catholic creeds and recognizing the Scriptures as containing all things necessary to salvation, but using a rite other than that set forth by this Church, shall desire affiliation with this Church, while retaining the use of its own rite, such congregation shall with the consent of the Bishop in whose Diocese it is situate make application through the Bishop to the Presiding Bishop for status.

Congregation  
seeking affiliation  
with this Church.

Sec. 2. Any minister who has not received episcopal ordination and desires to serve such a congregation shall conform to the provisions of Canon III. 12.

Non-episcopally  
ordained  
Ministers.

Sec. 3. In case the minister of such congregation shall have been ordained by a Bishop not in communion with this Church, but the regularity of whose ordination is approved by the Presiding Bishop, he shall be admitted in his Orders under the provision of Canon III. 12.

Ministers  
regularly  
ordained.

Sec. 4. Ministers and delegates of such congregations may have seats but no vote in the Diocesan Convention unless by formal action of such Convention they are so admitted.

Shall have seats  
but no vote.

Sec. 5. The oversight of congregations so admitted shall rest with the Bishop of the Diocese unless he shall delegate this authority to a Bishop who may be commissioned by the Presiding Bishop to have oversight of such congregations.

Oversight with  
Bishop of  
Diocese.

**CANON 16.**

**Of Regulations Respecting the Laity**

Sec. 1. All persons who have received the Sacrament of Holy Baptism with water in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy

Member defined.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 16.**

---

Ghost, and whose baptism has been duly recorded in this Church, are members thereof.

Member in good standing.

Sec. 2. All baptized persons who shall for one year next preceding have fulfilled the requirements of the Canon, "Of the Due Celebration of Sundays", unless for good cause prevented, are members of this Church in good standing.

Communicant in good standing.

Sec. 3. All such members in good standing who have been confirmed by a Bishop of this Church or a Bishop of a Church in communion with this Church or have been received into this Church by a Bishop of this Church, and who shall, unless for good cause prevented, have received Holy Communion at least thrice during the next preceding year, are communicants in good standing.

Rights not to be denied on account of race, color, ethnic origin.

Sec. 4. Every communicant or baptized member of this Church shall be entitled to equal rights and status in any Parish or Mission thereof. He shall not be excluded from the worship or Sacraments of the Church, nor from parochial membership, because of race, color, or ethnic origin.

Removal of communicant or baptized members.

Sec. 5. (a). A communicant or baptized member in good standing, removing from one Parish or Congregation to another, shall be entitled to receive and shall procure from the Rector or Minister of the Parish or Congregation of his or her last enrollment or, if there be no Rector or Minister, from one of the Wardens, a certificate addressed to the Rector or Minister of the Parish or Congregation to which removal is desired, stating that he or she is duly registered or enrolled as a communicant or baptized member in the Parish or Congregation from which he or she desires to be transferred, and the Rector or Minister or Warden of the Parish or Congregation to which such communicant or baptized member may remove shall enroll him or her as a communicant or baptized member when such certificate is presented, or, on failure to produce such certificate through no fault of such communicant or baptized member, upon other evidence of his or her being such a communicant or baptized member, sufficient in the judgment of said Rector or Minister. Notice of such enrollment in such Parish or Congregation to which such communicant or baptized member shall have removed shall be sent by the Rector or Minister thereof to the Rector of the Parish from which the communicant or baptized member is removed.

Certificate to be given.

Enrollment of.

Note of enrollment to be sent Rector.

Communicant of Church in communion with this Church.

(b). Any communicant of any Church in communion with this Church shall be entitled to the benefit of this Section so far as the same can be made applicable.

Duty of Rector or Minister.

(c). It shall be the duty of the Rector or Minister of every Parish or Congregation, learning of the removal of any member of his Parish or Congregation to another Cure without having secured a letter of transfer, as herein provided, to transmit to the Minister of such Cure a letter of advice informing him thereof.

Repulsion of communicants.

Sec. 6. When a person to whom the Sacraments of the Church shall have been refused, or who has been repelled from the Holy Communion under the Rubrics, or who desires a judgment as to his status in the Church, shall lodge a complaint or application with the Bishop, or Ecclesiastical Authority, it shall be the duty of the Bishop,

# TITLE I

## CANONS 16, 17.

---

or Ecclesiastical Authority, unless he or it sees fit to require the person to be admitted or restored because of the insufficiency of the cause assigned by the Minister, to institute such an inquiry as may be directed by the Canons of the Diocese, and should no such Canon exist, the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority shall proceed according to such principles of law and equity as will insure an impartial decision; but no Minister of this Church shall be required to admit to the Sacraments a person so refused or repelled, without the written direction of the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority.

### CANON 17.

#### Of the Solemnization of Holy Matrimony

Sec. 1. Every Minister of this Church shall conform to the laws of the State governing the creation of the civil status of marriage, and also to the laws of this Church governing the solemnization of Holy Matrimony.

Legal and canonical requirements.

Sec. 2. No Minister of this Church shall solemnize any marriage unless the following conditions are complied with:

Conditions.

- (a). He shall have ascertained the right of the parties to contract a marriage according to the laws of the State.
- (b). He shall have ascertained that both parties understand that Holy Matrimony is a physical and spiritual union of a man and a woman, entered into within the community of faith, by mutual consent of heart, mind, and will, and with intent that it be lifelong.
- (c). He shall have ascertained that both parties freely and knowingly consent to such marriage, without fraud, coercion, mistake as to identity of a partner, or mental reservation.
- (d). He shall have ascertained that at least one of the parties has received Holy Baptism.
- (e). He shall have instructed both parties as to the nature, meaning, and purpose of Holy Matrimony, or have ascertained that they have both received such instruction from persons known by him to be competent and responsible.

a) Laws of State.

b) Understanding of nature of Holy Matrimony.

c) Free consent.

d) One party at least baptized.

e) Instruction.

Sec. 3. No minister of this Church shall solemnize any marriage unless the following procedures are complied with:

Procedures.

- (a). The intention of the parties to contract marriage shall have been signified to the Minister at least thirty days before the service of solemnization; *Provided*, that, for weighty cause, the Minister may dispense with this requirement, if one of the parties is a member of his Congregation, or can furnish satisfactory evidence of his responsibility. In case the thirty days' notice is waived, the Minister shall report his action in writing to the Bishop immediately.
- (b). There shall be present at least two witnesses to the solemnization of the marriage.
- (c). The Minister shall record in the proper register the date and place of the marriage, the names of the parties and their parents, the age of the parties, their residences, and their Church status, and the witnesses and the Minister shall sign the record.

a) Thirty-days notice.

b) Witnesses.

c) Recorded in Register.



# TITLE I

## CANONS 17, 18.

---

Declaration of Intention.

- (d). The Minister shall have required that the parties sign the following declaration:

“We, A.B. and C.D., desiring to receive the blessing of Holy Matrimony in the Church, do solemnly declare that we hold marriage to be a lifelong union of husband and wife as it is set forth in the liturgical forms authorized by this Church. We believe it is for the purpose of mutual fellowship, encouragement, and understanding, for the procreation (if it may be) of children, and their physical and spiritual nurture, and for the safeguarding and benefit of society, and we do engage ourselves, so far as in us lies, to make our utmost effort to establish this relationship and to seek God’s help thereto.”

Minister may decline to officiate.

Sec. 4. It shall be within the discretion of any Minister of this Church to decline to solemnize any marriage.

### CANON 18.

#### Of Regulations Respecting Holy Matrimony: Concerning Preservation of Marriage, Dissolution of Marriage, and Re-marriage.

When marital unity is imperiled.

Sec. 1. When marital unity is imperiled by dissension, it shall be the duty of either or both parties, before contemplating legal action, to lay the matter before a Minister of this Church; and it shall be the duty of such Minister to labor that the parties may be reconciled.

Application to Bishop for judgment re marital status.

Sec. 2 (a). Any member of this Church whose marriage has been annulled or dissolved by a civil court may apply to the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which such person is legally or canonically resident for a judgment as to his or her marital status in the eyes of the Church. Such judgment may be a recognition of the nullity, or of the termination of the said marriage; *Provided*, that no such judgment shall be construed as affecting in any way the legitimacy of children or the civil validity of the former relationship.

Judgment in writing.

(b). Every judgment rendered under this Section shall be in writing and shall be made a matter of permanent record in the Archives of the Diocese.

Re-marriage of persons whose former union is dissolved.

Sec. 3. No Minister of this Church shall solemnize the marriage of any person who has been the husband or wife of any other person then living nor shall any member of this Church enter into a marriage when either of the contracting parties has been the husband or the wife of any other person then living, except as hereinafter provided:

Conditions.  
a) Final decree.

- (a). The Minister shall have satisfied himself by appropriate evidence that the prior marriage has been annulled or dissolved by a final judgment or decree of a civil court of competent jurisdiction.

b) Instruction on responsibility to former spouse and children.

- (b). The Minister shall have instructed the parties that continuing concern must be shown for the well-being of the former spouse, and of any children of the prior marriage.

c) Consultation with and consent of Bishop; report to.

- (c). The Minister shall consult with and obtain the consent of the Bishop prior to, and shall report to the Bishop, the solemnization of any marriage under this Section.

**TITLE I**  
**CANON 18.**

---

(d). If the proposed marriage is to be solemnized in a jurisdiction other than the one in which the consent has been given, the consent shall be affirmed by the Bishop of that jurisdiction.

d) Consent of Bishop of other jurisdiction required.

Sec. 4. All provisions of Canon I. 17 shall, in all cases, apply.



**TITLE II.**  
**CANONS 1, 2, 3.**

---

**TITLE II.**  
**WORSHIP**

---

**CANON 1.**

**Of the Due Celebration of Sundays**

All persons within this Church shall celebrate and keep the Lord's Day, commonly called Sunday, by regular participation in the public worship of the Church, by hearing the Word of God read and taught, and by other acts of devotion and works of charity, using all godly and sober conversation.

The Lord's Day  
to be observed.

**CANON 2.**

**Of Translations of the Bible.**

The Lessons at Morning and Evening Prayer shall be read from the translation of the Holy Scriptures, commonly known as the King James or Authorized Version (which is the Standard Bible of this Church), together with the Marginal Readings authorized for use by the General Convention of 1901; or from one of the three translations known as Revised Versions, including the English Revision of 1881, the American Revision of 1901, and the Revised Standard Version of 1952; from the Jerusalem Bible of 1966; from the New English Bible with the Apocrypha of 1970; or from Good News for Modern Man: The New Testament in Today's English Version (1966); or from The New American Bible (1970); or from The Revised Standard Version, an Ecumenical Edition, commonly known as the "R.S.V. Common Bible" (1973).

Versions  
authorized to be  
read in Church.

**CANON 3.**

**Of the Standard Book of Common Prayer**

Sec. 1. The copy of the Book of Common Prayer and Administration of the Sacraments and other Rites and Ceremonies of the Church, according to the Use of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, together with the Psalter or Psalms of David, the Form of Making, Ordaining, and Consecrating Bishops, Priests, and Deacons, the Form of Consecration of a Church or Chapel, and an Office of Institution of Ministers, and Articles of Religion, accepted by the General Convention of this Church, in the year of our Lord 1928, and authenticated by the signatures of the Presiding Officers and Secretaries of the two Houses of the General Convention, is hereby declared to be the Standard Book of Common Prayer of this Church.

What the  
Standard is.

Sec. 2. All copies of the Book of Common Prayer to be hereafter made and published shall conform to this Standard, and shall agree therewith in paging, and, as far as it is possible, in all other matters of typographical arrangement, except that the Rubrics may be printed either in red or black, and that page numbers shall be set against the several headings in the Table of Contents. The requirement of uniformity in paging shall apply to the entire book but shall not extend to editions smaller than those known as 32mo, or to editions noted for music.

All copies to  
conform to it.

## TITLE II. CANON 3.

---

How inaccuracies  
may be corrected.

Sec. 3. In case any typographical inaccuracy shall be found in the Standard Book of Common Prayer, its correction may be ordered by a joint Resolution of any General Convention, and notice of such corrections shall be communicated by the Custodian to the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese of this Church, and to actual publishers of the Book of Common Prayer.

Copies of  
Standard to be  
sent to Dioceses.

Sec. 4. Folio copies of the Standard Book of Common Prayer, duly authenticated, as in the case of the Standard Book, shall be sent to the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese in trust for the use thereof, and for reference and appeal in questions as to the authorized formularies of this Church.

All editions must  
be authorized.

Sec. 5. No copy, translation, or edition of the Book of Common Prayer, or a part or parts thereof, shall be made, printed, published, or used as of authority in this Church, unless it contains the authorization of the Custodian of the Standard Book of Common Prayer, certifying that he or some person appointed by him has compared the said copy, translation, or edition with the said Standard, or a certified copy thereof, and that it conforms thereto. And no copy, translation, or edition of the Book of Common Prayer, or a part or parts thereof, shall be made, printed, published, or used as of authority in this Church, or certified as aforesaid, which contains or is bound up with any alterations or additions thereto, or with any other matter, except the Holy Scriptures or the authorized Hymnal of this Church.

Trial use.

Sec. 6 (a). Whenever the General Convention, pursuant to Article X. of the Constitution, shall authorize for trial use a proposed revision of the Book of Common Prayer, or of a portion or portions thereof, the enabling Resolution shall specify the period of such trial use, the precise text thereof, and any special terms or conditions under which such trial use shall be carried out.

Duties of  
Custodian  
relative to trial  
use.

(b). It shall be the duty of the Custodian of the Standard Book of Common Prayer

- (1). To arrange for the publication of such proposed revisions;
- (2). To protect, by copyright, the authorized text of such revision, on behalf of the General Convention; which copyright shall be relinquished when such proposed revision or revisions shall have been adopted by the General Convention as an alteration of, or addition to, the Book of Common Prayer;
- (3). To certify that printed copies of such revision or revisions have been duly authorized by the General Convention, and that the printed text conforms to that approved by the General Convention.

Variations, etc.,  
in trial use texts  
—how  
authorized.

(c). During the said period of trial use and under the modifying conditions specified, only the material so authorized, and in the exact form in which it has been so authorized, shall be available as an alternative for the said Book of Common Prayer or the said portion or portions thereof; *Provided, however,* that it shall be competent for the Presiding Bishop and the President of the House of Deputies, jointly, on recommendation by a resolution duly adopted at a meeting of the Standing Liturgical Commission, and communicated to the said presiding officers in writing, to authorize variations and adjustments to, or substitutions for, or alterations in, any portion of the texts under

**TITLE II.**  
**CANONS 3, 4.**

---

trial, which seem desirable as a result of such trial use, and which do not change the substance of a rite.

(d). In the event of the authorization of such variations, adjustments, substitutions, or alternatives, as aforesaid, it shall be the duty of the Custodian of the Standard Book of Common Prayer to notify the Ecclesiastical Authority of every Diocese and the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, of such action, and to give notice thereof through the media of public information.

Sec. 7. The appointment of the Custodian of the Standard Book of Common Prayer shall be made by a nomination of the House of Bishops confirmed by the House of Deputies. He shall hold office until his successor is appointed, and any vacancy occurring during the recess of the General Convention may be provisionally filled by appointment by the Presiding Bishop.

Appointment of  
Custodian.

Sec. 8. It shall be the duty of the Ecclesiastical Authority of any Diocese in which any unauthorized edition of the Book of Common Prayer, or any part or parts thereof, shall be published or circulated, to give public notice that the said edition is not of authority in this Church.

Action on  
unauthorized  
editions.

**CANON 4.**

**Of a Standing Liturgical Commission**

Sec. 1. There shall be a Standing Liturgical Commission. It shall be the duty of this Commission to collect and collate material bearing upon future revisions of the Book of Common Prayer, to prepare and present to the General Convention from time to time recommendations concerning the Lectionary and the use of the Psalter, to prepare Offices for Special Occasions as authorized or directed by the General Convention or the House of Bishops, and upon request to advise concerning liturgical uses.

Liturgical  
Commission,  
duties of.

Sec. 2 (a). The Commission shall consist of nine members, of whom at least two shall be Bishops, two Presbyters, and two Laymen. The Custodian of the Book of Common Prayer shall be a member *ex officio* of the Commission.

How composed.

(b). The members shall be appointed by the Chairmen of the two Houses of the General Convention, the Bishops by the Presiding Bishop and the Presbyters and Laymen by the President of the House of Deputies, for a term of six years. Vacancies occurring during the interval between sessions of the General Convention may be filled by the Chairmen of the two Houses, those so appointed to serve until the close of the next session of the General Convention.

Appointment of  
members.

(c). The Commission shall elect its own Chairman and Secretary and have power to constitute committees necessary for the carrying on of its work.

Officers of.

Sec. 3. The expenses of the Commission shall be met by appropriations of the General Convention.

Expenses of.

## TITLE II. CANONS 5, 6.

---

### CANON 5.

#### Of the Authorization of Special Forms of Service

When special forms may be authorized for Congregation worshiping in a foreign language.

In any Congregation, worshiping in other than the English language, which shall have placed itself under the oversight of a Bishop of this Church, it shall be lawful to use a form of service in such language; *Provided*, that such form of service shall have previously been approved by the Bishop of the Diocese, until such time as an authorized edition of the Book of Common Prayer in such language shall be set forth by the authority of the General Convention; and *Provided further*, that no Bishop shall license any such form of service until he shall first have been satisfied that the same is in accordance with the Doctrine and Worship of this Church; nor in any case shall such form of service be used for the ordination or consecration of Bishops, Priests, or Deacons.

### CANON 6.

#### Of the Music of the Church

Minister responsible for music used in his Congregation.

Sec. 1. It shall be the duty of every Minister to see that music is used in his Congregation as an offering for the glory of God and as a help to the people in their worship in accordance with the Book of Common Prayer and as authorized by the Rubric or by the General Convention of this Church. To this end he shall be the final authority in the administration of matters pertaining to music, with such assistance as he may see fit to employ from persons skilled in music. It shall be his duty to suppress all light and unseemly music and all irreverence in the rendition thereof.

Duties.

Sec. 2 (a). There shall be a Standing Commission on Church Music. It shall be the duty of this Commission to collaborate with the Standing Liturgical Commission as regards the musical setting of liturgical texts and rubrics; encourage the writing of new music for liturgical use, and at times to produce such compositions in its own name; recommend norms both as to liturgical music and as to the manner of its rendition; serve as a link between associations of professional Church musicians and diocesan music commissions; assist in the setting up of diocesan and regional courses and conferences on Church music; collect and collate material bearing upon future revisions of the Church Hymnal; and, in general, serve the Church in matters pertaining to music.

Membership.

(b). The Commission shall consist of 12 members, of whom 2 shall be Bishops, 4 Presbyters, and 6 Lay Persons, of whom at least 4 are professional Church musicians.

How appointed.

(c). The members shall be appointed by the presiding officers of the two Houses of the General Convention, the Bishops by the Presiding Bishop, and the Presbyters and Lay Persons by the President of the House of Deputies, for a term of two Convention periods; except that in constituting the original Commission following the enactment of this Section, one (1) Bishop, two (2) Presbyters, and three (3) Lay Persons shall be appointed for a term of one Convention period, and the remaining six (6) members for a term of two Convention periods.

Terms.

**TITLE II.**  
**CANONS 6, 7.**

---

Vacancies occurring during the intervals between meetings of the General Convention may be filled by the respective presiding officers of the two Houses.

(d). The Commission shall elect its own Chairman and Secretary and shall have power to constitute committees and engage consultants and co-ordinators necessary for the carrying on of its work.

Officers and agents.

(e). The expenses of the Commission shall be met by appropriations of the General Convention.

Expenses.

**CANON 7.**

**Of Dedicated and Consecrated Churches**

Sec. 1. It shall not be lawful for any Vestry, Trustees, or other body authorized by laws of any State or Territory to hold property for any Diocese, Parish or Congregation, to encumber or alienate any dedicated and consecrated Church or Chapel, or any Church or Chapel which has been used solely for Divine Service, belonging to the Parish or Congregation which they represent, without the previous consent of the Bishop, acting with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee of the Diocese.

Vestry not to encumber or alienate without consent of Bishop and Standing Committee.

Sec. 2. No dedicated and consecrated Church or Chapel shall be removed, taken down, or otherwise disposed of for any worldly or common use, without the previous consent of the Bishop, acting with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee of the Diocese.

No church to be taken down or applied to any common uses without same consent.





## TITLE III. CANONS 1, 2.

---

### TITLE III. MINISTRY

---

#### CANON 1.

##### Of Diocesan Commissions on Ministry

Sec. 1. In every Diocese there shall be a Commission on Ministry consisting of Clergymen and Lay Persons. The number of members, terms of office, and manner of selection to the Commission on Ministry shall be determined by Diocesan Canons.

To be set up in every Diocese.

Sec. 2. The Commission on Ministry may adopt rules for its work, subject to the approval of the Bishop; *Provided*, the same are not inconsistent with the Canons of the General Convention and the Diocese. These rules may include the appointment of committees of the Commission (such as Selection, Examination, Interviewing, and Continuing Education) to act on its behalf; with ultimate responsibility remaining with the Commission as a whole to certify the applicant for admission as a Candidate and for ordination to the Diaconate and to the Priesthood.

To adopt rules for its work.

May appoint Committees.

Sec. 3. The Commission on Ministry shall assist the Bishop in determining present and future needs for Ministry in the Diocese, and in matters pertaining to the enlistment and selection of persons for Ministry, and in the guidance of all Candidates for Holy Orders.

Duties.

Sec. 4. In those cases where the conduct and evaluation of the examination of persons for Holy Orders is assigned to the Diocesan Commission on Ministry, the said Commission shall make the Report called for under Title III, Canon 7, Section 4.

If assigned examining role, to make report thereon.

Sec. 5. In the presence of the Bishop, and under his guidance and oversight, the Commission on Ministry shall interview each Candidate before his ordination to the Diaconate, and, at their discretion, before his ordination to the Priesthood, to ascertain his personal readiness for such ordination; and shall report in writing and without delay the findings of this interview to the Bishop and the Standing Committee.

To interview Candidates before ordination.

Sec. 6. The Commission on Ministry shall assist the Bishop in the guidance and pastoral care of Deacons, of Deaconesses, if there be such, and of Professional Church Workers.

Guidance, pastoral care, Deacons, etc.

Sec. 7. The Commission on Ministry shall assist the Bishop in matters pertaining to the continuing education of the Ministry.

Continuing education.

#### CANON 2.

##### Of Candidates for Holy Orders

Sec. 1. This Canon shall be interpreted in its plain and literal sense, except that words of male gender shall also imply the female gender.

Gender of words.

Sec. 2 (a). Every person desiring to be admitted a Candidate for Holy Orders is, in the first instance, to consult his immediate Pastor, or, if he have none, some Presbyter to whom he is personally known, setting before him the grounds of his desire for admission to the Ministry, together with such circumstances as may bear on his qualifications, or tend to affect his course of preparation.

To consult with Pastor.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 2.**

---

To make desire known to Bishop.

(b) (1). If, as the result of a careful inquiry into the physical, intellectual, moral, emotional, and spiritual qualifications of the applicant, he is counseled by the aforesaid Presbyter to persevere in his intentions, he shall make his desire known personally, if possible, or in writing, to the Bishop in whose jurisdiction he has been canonically resident for the three months preceding.

May apply to other Bishop.

(2). But, with the written consent of the said Bishop, and on the recommendation of at least one Presbyter of the said jurisdiction who is acquainted with the applicant, the latter may at once apply to some other Bishop. He shall give to that Bishop the name of his Pastor, or, if he have none, of some other Presbyter in good standing, to whom he is personally known, from whom the Bishop shall ascertain, either by personal conference, or by direct report in writing, his qualifications, as stated above, for the work of the Ministry.

Information to be given by applicant.

(c). The applicant shall state to the Bishop in writing

- (1). His full name, date of birth, and marital status.
- (2). The length of time he has been resident in the Diocese.
- (3). When, and by whom, he was baptized.
- (4). When, and by whom, he was confirmed.
- (5). When, and where, he was admitted to the Holy Communion.
- (6). Whether he has ever before applied for admission as a Candidate for Holy Orders.
- (7). On what grounds he is moved to seek the Sacred Ministry.
- (8). The level of education which he has attained, with degrees earned, if any, and areas of specialization.

Conference with Bishop desirable.

(d). Before the admission of a Candidate, the Bishop shall whenever possible confer in person with the applicant, and shall require the applicant to submit to a thorough examination, covering both mental and physical condition, by professionals appointed by the Bishop. The forms for medical and psychiatric reports prepared by The Church Pension Fund shall be used for this purpose.

Examination required.

These reports shall be kept on file by the Bishop and shall be made available to the Standing Committee and the Commission on Ministry.

Reports to be kept on file.

Sec. 3 (a). No Bishop shall consider accepting as a Candidate any person who has been refused admission as a Candidate for Holy Orders in any other Diocese, or who, having been admitted, has afterwards ceased to be a Candidate, until he shall have produced a letter from the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he has been refused admission, or in which he has been a Candidate, declaring the cause of refusal or of cessation.

If applicant has been previously refused Candidacy or has had Candidacy terminated by another Bishop.

(b). Should the Bishop then decide to proceed in the matter, he shall send the said letter or a copy thereof to the Commission on Ministry.

If satisfied, Bishop to send application to Commission on Ministry.

Sec. 4 (a). If, on the basis of the application, and of a personal interview (if such was had), the Bishop is moved to proceed in the matter, he shall so notify the applicant and the Chairman of the Commission on Ministry. The said Commission, either as a whole, or by means of a Committee charged with the responsibility, shall meet with the applicant to review the application and to prepare a recommendation in respect of the applicant's qualifications to pursue a course of preparation for Holy Orders. This meeting may take place at

Applicant to meet with Commission on Ministry or Committee thereof.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 2.**

---

an interdiocesan conference in the conduct of which the Diocesan Commission is represented.

(b). The Commission on Ministry shall lay before the Bishop and the Standing Committee, with regard to each applicant, the aforesaid recommendation, together with reasons therefor.

Sec. 5 (a). The following papers shall be laid before the Standing Committee, to wit:

- (1). The formal application specified in Section 2 of this Canon.
- (2). The recommendation of the Commission on Ministry, as provided in Section 4 above.
- (3). If the applicant is or has been a student in a theological school, a transcript of his academic record together with the school's evaluation of his personal qualifications for the Ministry of this Church.
- (4). A certificate from the Minister and Vestry of the Parish of which the applicant is a communicant, setting forth the grounds upon which they judge him to possess such qualifications as would fit him to be admitted a Candidate for Holy Orders, and whether their judgment is based on personal knowledge or on evidence satisfactory to them.

Commission to make recommendation to Bishop and Standing Committee.

Papers to be furnished to Standing Committee.

Certificate from Minister and Vestry.

This certificate must be signed by both the Minister of the Parish to which the applicant belongs and by a majority of the whole Vestry, and must be attested by the Minister, or by the Clerk or Secretary of the Vestry, as follows, viz.:

I hereby certify that the foregoing certificate was signed at a meeting of the Vestry of \_\_\_\_\_ Parish, \_\_\_\_\_, duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_ on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and that the names attached are those of all (or a majority of all) the members of the Vestry.

(Signed) \_\_\_\_\_,  
Clerk or Secretary of Vestry.

But should the parish be without a Minister, it shall suffice that in his place the certificate from the Vestry be signed by some Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing to whom the applicant is personally known, the reason for the substitution being stated in the attesting clause.

If Parish has no Minister, who is to sign.

Should there be no organized Parish at the place of residence of the applicant, or should it be impracticable, through circumstances not affecting his moral or religious character, to obtain the signatures of the Minister and Vestry, or of the Vestry, it may suffice if the certificate be signed by at least—

If no Parish at place of applicant's residence, who is to certify.

- (1). One Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing to whom the applicant is personally known; and,
- (2). Four Lay Persons, communicants of this Church in good standing, to whom the applicant is personally known.

In such case, the reasons for departing from the regular form must be given in the attesting clause, which shall be signed by the same, or some other Presbyter of this Church in good standing, and shall be in the following words, viz.:

Reasons for alternate procedure to be stated.

**TITLE III.  
CANON 2.**

---

I hereby certify that the Lay Persons whose names are attached to the foregoing certificate are communicants of this Church in good standing, and that this form of certificate was used for no reasons affecting the moral or religious character of the applicant but because (here give the reasons for departing from the regular form).

(Signed) \_\_\_\_\_,

Presbyter of the Diocese of \_\_\_\_\_

Standing  
Committee may  
require applicant  
to appear.

(b) The Standing Committee may require that the applicant appear before it, in order that the members thereof may have a personal acquaintance with him.

Testimonial from  
Standing  
Committee.

Sec. 6. The Standing Committee, on receipt of the recommendation of the Commission on Ministry required in Canon III. 2. Sec. 4, and of the certificate or certificates as above described, and, after investigation, having found the applicant to possess qualifications which fit him to be admitted a Candidate for Holy Orders, and having no reason to suppose the existence of any sufficient objection on grounds either physical, intellectual, moral, emotional, or spiritual, to his admission, may, at a meeting duly convened (a majority of all the members consenting), recommend him for admission to Candidacy, by a testimonial bearing the signatures of a majority of all the members of the Committee, and addressed to the Bishop, in the following words, viz.:

**TO THE RIGHT REVEREND \_\_\_\_\_, Bishop of \_\_\_\_\_**

**We, being a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_, and having been duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_, do testify that from personal knowledge or from certificates laid before us we are well assured that A.B. is sober, honest, and godly; and that he is a communicant of this Church in good standing; and we do furthermore declare that, in our opinion, he possesses qualifications which fit him to be admitted a Candidate for Holy Orders.**

**In witness whereof, we have hereunto set our hands, this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of our Lord, \_\_\_\_\_.**

(Signed) \_\_\_\_\_,

This testimonial shall be presented to the Bishop without delay.

Bishop may  
admit applicant  
to Candidacy.

Sec. 7. When the aforesaid requirements have been complied with, the Bishop may admit the applicant as a Candidate for Holy Orders. He shall thereupon record his name, with the date of his admission, in a book to be kept for that purpose, and shall inform the Candidate, the Secretary of the Standing Committee, the Commission on Ministry, and the Dean of the Seminary he may be attending, of the fact and date of such admission.

Who is to be  
notified.

When Standing  
Committee is to  
act in lieu of  
Bishop.

Sec. 8. A Standing Committee, acting as the Ecclesiastical Authority of a Diocese, shall be competent to receive and act upon applications under this Canon from persons desiring to be received as Candidates.

Evidence of  
previous  
education to be  
furnished.

Sec. 9 (a). The Candidate, before entering upon, or pursuing further, his course of theological studies, must lay before the Bishop and the Commission on Ministry satisfactory evidence that he is the holder of an accredited baccalaureate degree, or its equivalent, together with a

### TITLE III

#### CANON 2.

---

full transcript of the academic work he has completed. If this work includes sufficient instruction in the subjects specified in clause (b) of this Section, and is otherwise deemed adequate and satisfactory, no examination shall be required.

(b). If the Candidate is not a graduate as aforesaid, and has not attained the age of 32 years, he may be required to obtain an accredited baccalaureate degree; if not, he shall be required to pass an examination, to be administered by the Commission on Ministry, or otherwise satisfy them that his knowledge is sufficient in the following subjects:

Non-graduate under age 32 to be examined.

- (1). English or the language (including grammar and composition) and
- (2). Literature of the country in which he expects to exercise his Ministry;
- (3). History;
- (4). One of the following subjects:
  - (a). Mathematics,
  - (b). A Natural Science,
  - (c). Philosophy,
  - (d). A Social Science.

(c). If the Candidate is not a graduate as aforesaid, and has attained the age of 32 years, and has shown such proficiency in his occupation or profession as gives promise of usefulness in the Ministry, he shall be examined in the subjects listed in Sec. 9 (b) above, or otherwise satisfy the Commission on Ministry that his knowledge in these fields is generally satisfactory.

Dispensation for non-graduate above age 32.

(d). If the native language of the Candidate is other than English, and he is to exercise his Ministry among peoples of his own language, or if he is of a distinctive or foreign culture, the Bishop may, on the recommendation of the Commission on Ministry, dispense him from the academic requirements of Sec. 9 (b) above, precedent to his being admitted to Candidacy.

Dispensation for non-graduates of other language or distinctive culture.

(e). Should a Candidate who has been examined in any of the subjects prescribed in Sec. 9 (b) above afterwards apply for admission as Candidate in any other Diocese, he shall lay before the Bishop of such Diocese a certificate from the Bishop who admitted him as a Candidate stating what examinations he has taken and the result of each.

Results of examination under 9(b) to be furnished if Candidate later applies to other Bishop.

The Commission on Ministry may accept, in lieu of examination, satisfactory evidence that the Candidate has fulfilled the requirements in any one or more of the subjects specified.

Evidence in lieu of examination.

(f). In every case the applicant must satisfy the Bishop and the Commission on Ministry that he possesses the intellectual ability and competence to enable him to pursue a course of study preparatory to the work of the Ministry.

Bishop and Commission on Ministry to be satisfied as to intellectual competence.

Sec. 10. The Commission on Ministry shall report to the Bishop in writing whether the above requirements have been met, and the Bishop shall make this report available to the Standing Committee.

Commission on Ministry to report to Bishop and he to Standing Committee concerning non-graduates.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 3.**

---

**CANON 3**

**Of General Provisions Concerning Candidates for Holy Orders**

Gender of words.

Sec. 1. This Canon shall be interpreted in its plain and literal sense, except that words of male gender shall also imply female gender.

Guidance of Candidates the responsibility of Bishop, assisted by Commission on Ministry.

Sec. 2 (a). The guidance of all Candidates for Holy Orders, both as to their daily life and as to the direction of their theological studies is the responsibility of the Bishop of the Diocese in which the Candidate is canonically resident. In the exercise of this guidance, the Bishop shall be assisted by the Commission on Ministry.

When clerical members of Standing Committee to act.

(b). When the Standing Committee of a Diocese is the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof, the clerical members of the Committee shall, through the President, discharge the duties assigned in this Section to the Bishop.

Canonical residence of Candidate.

Sec. 3 (a). A Candidate must remain in canonical connection with the Diocese in which he has been admitted, until his ordination to the Diaconate, except as hereinafter otherwise provided.

May be granted Letters Dimissory.

(b). For reasons satisfactory to the Ecclesiastical Authority, Letters Dimissory may be granted to a Candidate on his own request to any other Diocese; *Provided*, that the same is acceptable to the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof, with the consent of the Commission on Ministry and the Standing Committee of that Diocese.

Annual reports on Candidates from Seminary or those assigned to supervise study.

Sec. 4 (a). During the course of the Candidate's academic preparation for Holy Orders, an annual report shall be rendered to the Bishop and to the Candidate by the theological school he is attending, or by the Presbyter or Presbyters under whom he is assigned to pursue his studies; which report shall contain an evaluation both of his academic performance and of his personal qualifications to exercise the ordained Ministry of this Church.

Reports to be filed and made available.

(b). These reports shall be kept on file in the Bishop's office, and copies thereof shall be made available to the Commission on Ministry and the Standing Committee.

Candidate to report in Ember Weeks.

Sec. 5 (a). Every Candidate for Holy Orders shall communicate with the Ecclesiastical Authority, personally or by letter, four times a year, in the Ember Weeks, reflecting on his academic experience and his personal and spiritual development.

To present self for examination within three years.

(b). If a Candidate for Holy Orders shall fail to present himself for canonical examinations (see Canon III.7) within three years from the date of his admission as a Candidate, his name may, after due notice, be removed from the list of Candidates by the Bishop, after consultation with the Standing Committee.

Candidacy may be terminated for cause.

(c). If a Candidate for Holy Orders shall have passed his canonical examinations, but on other grounds is refused recommendation for ordination, the Bishop, with the consent of the Standing Committee, may remove his name from the list of Candidates after due notice and indication of the grounds for removal have been given the Candidate.

Rejected Candidate to renew Candidacy before ordination.

Sec. 6. A Candidate for Holy Orders, in any Diocese of this Church, or of any Church in communion with this Church, whose name shall have been removed from the list of Candidates, except by Letters

### **TITLE III**

### **CANONS 3, 4, 5.**

---

Dimissory, or whose application for ordination shall have been rejected, shall not be ordained without re-admission to Candidacy, said Candidacy to continue for not less than one whole year.

#### **CANON 4.**

(Reserved)

#### **CANON 5.**

##### **Of the Normal Standard of Learning and Examination of Candidates for Holy Orders**

Sec. 1 (a). Before ordination to the Diaconate, the Candidate must pass examinations in the following subject matter:

Subject matter of examination.

- (1). The Holy Scriptures;
- (2). Church History;
- (3). Christian Theology;
- (4). Christian Ethics, and Moral Theology;
- (5). Studies in Contemporary Society, including Racial and Minority Groups;
- (6). Liturgics: Christian Worship and the contents and use of the Book of Common Prayer;
- (7). Theory and Practice of Ministry.

(b). If the Candidate has been a Minister or Licentiate in some other body of Christians, he shall also be examined in writing on those points of Doctrine, Discipline, Polity, and Worship, in which the Communion from which he has come agrees with and differs from this Church.

Examination of Candidates from other Christian Bodies.

Sec. 2 (a). In special cases, under urgent circumstances, with the approval of the Standing Committee and the Commission on Ministry, a Candidate may be admitted to the Diaconate after passing examinations, conducted by the Commission on Ministry, covering the following subject matter:

Limited examination for Deacon's Orders in special cases.

- (1). Holy Scripture: The Bible in English, its contents, and historical background;
- (2). Church History: a general outline;
- (3). Christian Theology: The Church's teaching as set forth in the Creeds and the Offices of Instruction;
- (4). Studies in Contemporary Society, including Racial and other Minority Groups;
- (5). Liturgics: The Contents and Use of the Book of Common Prayer;
- (6). Theory and Practice of Ministry;
  - (a). The Office and Work of a Deacon;
  - (b). The Conduct of Public Worship.

(b). It shall be the privilege of the Bishop and of the Priest who is to present the Candidate for ordination to be present at such examinations.

Bishop and Presenter may attend.

(c). Before his ordination to the Priesthood, the Commission on Ministry shall satisfy themselves, and shall certify to the Bishop, that such Candidate is qualified in the subject matter set forth in Section 1(a) of this Canon.



# TITLE III

## CANONS 5, 6, 7.

---

Seminary examination not to supersede canonical examinations.

Sec. 3 (a). Examinations at any theological institution shall not supersede any canonical examination, nor shall any certificate of graduation or diploma be sufficient ground for dispensing with any part of the canonical examination, except as provided in this Canon.

### CANON 6.

#### Of a Board for Theological Education

Board for Theological Education.

Sec. 1. There shall be a Board for Theological Education of the General Convention, consisting of fifteen members, appointed jointly, at a regular meeting of the General Convention, by the Presiding Bishop and the President of the House of Deputies, with the confirmation of the General Convention.

Duties.

Sec. 2. The duties of the Board for Theological Education shall be

(a). To study the needs and trends of education for Holy Orders in the Church, within the jurisdiction of this Church, and to make recommendations to the Executive Council, the House of Bishops, and the General Convention, with regard thereto.

(b). To advise and assist the Seminaries, and other institutions of the Church for the training of men for Holy Orders, within the jurisdiction of this Church.

(c). To promote continuing co-operation between and among the Theological Seminaries of the Church.

(d). To compile and present to each regular meeting of the General Convention a complete statistical report of the work of the several Theological Seminaries of the Church, and, as far as possible, of other institutions for the training of men for Holy Orders.

(e). To assist in the enlistment and selection of candidates for Holy Orders.

(f). To promote the continuing education of clergymen.

(g). To assist in programs of lay theological education.

(h). To aid the General Board of Examining Chaplains in the discharge of its responsibilities.

(i) To seek appropriate financial support for theological education.

Seminaries, etc., to provide information.

Sec. 3. It shall be the duty of each Theological Seminary of this Church, and of each other institution for the training of men for Holy Orders, to present annually to the Board for Theological Education statistical reports, on forms prepared and provided by the Board.

### CANON 7.

#### Of a General Board of Examining Chaplains

General Board of Examining Chaplains.

Sec. 1. There shall be a General Board of Examining Chaplains, consisting of three Bishops, six Presbyters with pastoral cures, six members of Theological Seminary faculties or of other educational institutions, and six Lay Persons. The members of the board shall be elected by the House of Bishops and confirmed by the House of Deputies, one-third of such members in each of the foregoing categories being so elected and confirmed at each regular meeting of the General Convention for a term of three Convention periods. They shall take office at the close of the said meeting, and shall serve until their successors are elected and qualified. The House of Bishops, at any special meeting that may be held prior to the next General

How chosen.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 7.**

---

Convention, shall fill for the unexpired portion of the term any vacancy that may have arisen in the interim. The Board shall elect its own Chairman and Secretary, and shall have the power to constitute committees necessary for the carrying on of its work.

To elect officers.

Sec. 2 (a). The General Board of Examining Chaplains, with professional assistance, shall prepare at least annually a General Ordination Examination covering the subject matter set forth in Canon III. 5. 1(a), and shall conduct, administer, and evaluate the same in respect of those Candidates for Holy Orders who have been certified to the Board by their several Bishops.

General  
Ordination  
Examination.

(b). Persons from jurisdictions outside the forty-eight contiguous States, and others specifically excepted (see Canons III. 2, Sec 5 (b) and (c); III. 5, Sec. 2 (a); and III. 8) shall be examined by the Commission on Ministry of their Diocese.

(c). Whenever a Candidate shall have been judged by the General Board of Examining Chaplains to have failed the General Ordination Examination, either in whole or in part, the Board shall recommend to the Commission on Ministry; and through the Commission on Ministry to the Board of Examining Chaplains, if such exist, of the Diocese to which such candidate belongs how the deficiency may be overcome.

Sec. 3. The General Board of Examining Chaplains may prepare, in each Convention period, guidelines based upon the subjects contained in Canon III. 5, Sec. 1 (a), which guidelines shall be available to all persons concerned.

May prepare  
guidelines.

Sec. 4. The General Board of Examining Chaplains shall promptly report, in writing, to the Bishop and to the Dean of the Seminary the Candidate is attending, the results of all examinations held by them, whether satisfactory or unsatisfactory, making separate reports upon each person examined. The Bishop shall transmit these reports to the Standing Committee and to the Commission on Ministry. In no case shall the Standing Committee recommend a Candidate for Ordination to the Diaconate or to the Priesthood under this Canon until the required examinations have been satisfactorily sustained.

Board to make  
report.

Report of the Board shall be made in the following form, viz.:

Form of Report.

**To the Right Reverend**

**Bishop of (or the Clerical Members of the Standing Committee of, as the case may be)**

Place, \_\_\_\_\_ Date, \_\_\_\_\_

**To the Dean of**

Place, \_\_\_\_\_ Date, \_\_\_\_\_

(We, having been assigned as)

**Examiners of A. B., hereby testify that we have examined the said A.B. upon the subject matter prescribed in Canon III. 5. Sensible of our responsibility, we give our judgment as follows: (Here specify the proficiency of A. B. in the subject matter appointed, or any deficiency therein, as made apparent by the examination.)**

(Signed)

Sec. 5. In any case when the report from the Board of Examining Chaplains is held in question on grounds of Doctrine, Faith, or

# TITLE III.

## CANONS 7, 8.

---

Worship, by the Bishop and the Standing Committee, a Provincial Court of Appeal may be brought into being, according to provisions established by Provincial authority.

Sec. 6. The General Board of Examining Chaplains shall make a report concerning its work to each regular meeting of the General Convention, and, in years between sessions of the General Convention, shall make a report to the House of Bishops.

### CANON 8.

#### Of Admission to Holy Orders in Special Cases

Requirements may be modified in special cases.

Sec. 1. In special cases, the requirements of the Normal Standard of Learning may be modified as hereinafter provided. But, in every case, before a Deacon shall be ordered Priest, he shall be examined, by the Bishop and two Presbyters, in the office and work of a Priest and as to his ability to serve the Church in that Order of the Ministry.

Nature of communities.

Sec. 2 (a). With regard to communities which are small, isolated, remote, or distinct in respect of ethnic composition, language, or culture, and which can be supplied only intermittently with the sacramental and pastoral ministrations of the Church, it shall be competent for the Bishop, with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, and with the prior approval in principle of the House of Bishops of the Province, to seek out and ordain to the Diaconate, and not less than six months later to the Priesthood, residents of the said communities or of the Diocese, after a period of Candidacy (pursuant to Canon III.2.9(d) of not less than six months' duration. In the selection of such Candidates, the recommendations of communicants of this Church resident in said communities shall be sought.

Qualification of ordinands.

(b). The person to be ordained under the provisions of this Section shall have the following qualifications:

- (1). He shall be not less than thirty-two years of age, and shall have been a member of this Church in good standing for at least five years.
- (2). He shall have been a regular attendant upon the stated services of the Church, and faithful in resorting to the Sacraments when available, and a regular contributor of record to the support of the Church.
- (3). He shall be reputed in the community to have comported himself as a Christian in his personal and family life and in his dealings with others in the community.
- (4). He shall satisfy the Bishop and the Commission on Ministry of the Diocese of his ability to read the Holy Scriptures and conduct the services of the Church in an intelligible, seemly, and reverent fashion. He shall satisfy them likewise of his knowledge of the general outline of the contents of the Old and New Testaments, and of the Church's teaching as set forth in the Creeds and Offices of Instruction.

Limitations on movement.

(c). If a Deacon or Priest who has been ordained in accordance with this Canon shall subsequently remove to another community within the Diocese, he shall be entitled to exercise his ministry in that place only if he be licensed thereto by the Bishop. Such Ministers shall not

# TITLE III

## CANONS 8, 9.

---

be granted Letters Dimissory to another Diocese without the request, in writing, of the Bishop of the Diocese to which he wishes to remove.

Sec. 3. In all cases of the ordination under this Canon of men with modified requirements of learning, a record of the modifications shall be kept by the Bishop, and the standing of every Minister thus ordained shall be reported to the Recorder with the other matters required in Canon I. 1, Sec. 6 (b).

Record of modified requirements to be kept.

### CANON 9.

#### Of General Provisions Respecting Ordination

Sec. 1. In accordance with ancient Canons, ordinations shall be held on the Sundays following the Ember Weeks, except that the Bishop may, if he deem proper, for urgent reasons, appoint special ordinations at other times.

Ordinations to be held at Ember Season.

Sec. 2. No appointment for the ordination of any Candidate shall be made until the Bishop has had due notice that all the canonical requirements have been complied with.

All canonical requirements to be complied with.

Sec. 3 (a). For the purpose of this and other Canons of Ordination, the authority assigned to the Bishop of the Diocese may be exercised by a Bishop Coadjutor, when so empowered under Canon III. 14, Sec. 2(a), or by a Suffragan Bishop when requested by the Bishop of a Diocese, or by a Missionary Bishop, or any other Bishop of this Church canonically in charge of a Diocese or of Congregations in foreign parts.

When Bishop Coadjutor or Suffragan Bishop or Missionary Bishop may act.

(b). The Council of Advice of the Convocation of the American Churches in Europe, and the board appointed by a Missionary Bishop having jurisdiction in an Area Mission, in accordance with the provisions of Canon I.10.2(c), shall, for the purpose of this and other Canons included in Title III of these Canons, have the same powers as the Standing Committee of a Diocese.

Power of Council of Advice.

(c). In case of a vacancy in the episcopate in a Diocese or Missionary Diocese, the Ecclesiastical Authority may authorize and request the President of the Province, or another Bishop, to take order for an ordination.

In vacant jurisdiction another Bishop may be asked to act.

Sec. 4 (a). No certificate or testimonial, the form of which is supplied by Canon, shall be valid, unless it be in the words prescribed; the omission of the date therefrom shall render such certificate or testimonial liable to rejection.

Certificates to be in words prescribed.

(b). No Candidate for Holy Orders shall sign any of the certificates prescribed in the Canons of Ordination.

No Candidate to sign.

(c). Whenever the testimonial of the Standing Committee is required, such testimonial must be signed at a meeting duly convened, and, in the absence of express provision to the contrary, by a majority of the whole Committee.

Requirements as to signature of Standing Committee.

(d). Whenever the certificate of a Vestry is required, such certificate must be signed by a majority of the whole Vestry, at a meeting duly convened, and the fact must be attested by the Secretary of the said Vestry or by the Minister.

Requirements as to signature of Vestry.

## TITLE III

### CANONS 9, 10.

---

Mode of applying for dispensation.

Sec. 5. Whenever dispensation from any of the requirements of the Canons of Ordination is permitted, with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, the application must be first made to the Bishop, and, if he approve it, be by him referred to the Committee.

Standing Committee to give reasons if declining to recommend.

Sec. 6. If, in the case of any applicant for admission as a Candidate for Holy Orders, or for ordination, a majority of the Standing Committee refuse to recommend, or shall fail to act within three months, although the required certificates have been laid before the Committee, it shall be the duty of the Committee, without delay, to give to the Bishop the reasons, in writing, for such refusal or failure to act.

Testimonials, etc., to apply to Ordinations beyond the United States.

Sec. 7 (a). No Bishop of this Church shall ordain any person to officiate in any Congregation beyond the limits of the United States until the testimonials and certificates required by the Canons of Ordination shall have been supplied, except as provided for as follows:

Special testimonials permitted in foreign lands.

(b). Any Missionary Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction in foreign lands, or any Bishop to whom the charge of Congregations in foreign lands shall have been assigned by the Presiding Bishop, may ordain as Deacons or Presbyters, to officiate within the limits of his charge, any persons of the age required by the Canons of this Church, who shall exhibit to him the testimonials required by Canons 10 and 11 of Title III, signed by not less than two Presbyters of this Church, who may be subject to his charge, and other satisfactory evidence of moral character from natives of the country not in Holy Orders; *Provided, nevertheless*, that if there be only one Presbyter of this Church subject to his charge, and capable of acting at the time, the signature of a Presbyter in good standing under the jurisdiction of any Bishop in communion with this Church may be admitted to supply the deficiency.

#### CANON 10.

##### Of Ordination to the Diaconate

Candidate to be twenty-one years of age.

Sec. 1. No one shall be ordered Deacon until he shall be twenty-one years of age.

To be eighteen months a Candidate, unless the time be shortened.

Sec. 2. No one shall be ordered Deacon within eighteen months from his admission as Candidate for Holy Orders, unless, under special circumstances, the Bishop, with the advice and consent of a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee, shall shorten the time of his Candidacy; and in no case shall the time be shortened to less than six months.

Physical examination required.

Sec. 3. Before the ordination of a Deacon the Bishop shall require the applicant to submit to a thorough examination by a physician appointed by the Bishop. This examination shall cover the man's mental and nervous as well as his physical condition. The form of medical report prepared by The Church Pension Fund shall be used for this purpose. This report shall be kept on file by the Bishop and shall be submitted to the Standing Committee when application is made by the Candidate to be ordained Deacon.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 10.**

---

Sec. 4. No one shall be ordered Deacon unless he be first recommended to the Bishop by the Standing Committee of the Diocese to which he belongs.

Recommendation from Standing Committee.

Sec. 5. In order to be recommended for ordination the Candidate must lay before the Standing Committee

Papers to be laid before Standing Committee.

- (1). An application therefor in writing, signed by himself, which shall state the date of his birth.
- (2). A certificate from the Bishop by whom he was admitted a Candidate, declaring the date of his admission; but when such certificate cannot be had, other evidence satisfactory to the Committee shall suffice.
- (3). A certificate from a Presbyter of this Church, known to the Ecclesiastical Authority, in the following words, viz.:

To the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_  
Place, \_\_\_\_\_ Date, \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that I am personally acquainted with A. B., and that I believe him to be well qualified to minister in the Office of Deacon, to the glory of God and the edification of His Church.

(Signed)

- (4). A certificate from the Minister and Vestry of the Parish of which he is a member, in the following words, viz.:

To the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_  
Place, \_\_\_\_\_ Date, \_\_\_\_\_

We do certify that, after due inquiry, we are well assured and believe that A. B., for the space of three years last past, hath lived a sober, honest, and godly life, and that he is loyal to the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church, and does not hold anything contrary thereto. And, moreover, we think him a person worthy to be admitted to the Sacred Order of Deacons.

(Signed)

This certificate must be attested by the Minister of the Parish, or by the Clerk or Secretary of the Vestry, as follows, viz.:

I hereby certify that A.B., is a member of \_\_\_\_\_  
Parish in \_\_\_\_\_ and  
a communicant of the same; that the foregoing certificate was signed at a meeting of the Vestry duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_  
on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_; and that the names attached are those of all (or a majority of all) the members of the Vestry.

(Signed)

The Minister of \_\_\_\_\_  
or Clerk or Secretary of Vestry.

- (5). A certificate from the Theological Seminary where he has been studying, or from the clergyman under whose direction he has been pursuing his studies, showing his scholastic record in the subjects required by the Canons, and giving a judgment as to his personal qualifications for the Ministry of this Church.

Sec. 6. Should the Parish be without a Minister, it shall suffice that in his place the certificate required in paragraph (4) above be signed by

If Parish has no Minister.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 10.**

---

some Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing, the reason for the substitution being stated in the attesting clause.

If there be no Parish, by whom certificate is to be signed.

Sec. 7 (a). Should there be no organized Parish at the place of residence of the Candidate, or should it be impracticable, through circumstances not affecting his moral or religious character, to obtain the signatures of the Minister and Vestry, or of the Vestry, it may suffice if the certificate be signed by at least—

One Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing, and six Laymen, communicants of this Church in good standing; or should the Candidate within the space of three years last past have been a Minister or Licentiate in some other body of Christians, by three Presbyters of this Church as to the period during which he has been a Candidate, and by six adult male members in good standing of the denomination from which the Candidate came, as to the period, within the space of three years last past, before he became a Candidate.

Reasons for this form of certificate to be stated.

(b). In such case, the reasons for departing from the regular form must be given in the attesting clause, which shall be signed by the same, or some other Presbyter of this Church in good standing, and shall be in the following words, viz.:

**I hereby certify that the Laymen whose names are attached to the foregoing certificate are communicants of this Church in good standing, and that this form of certificate was used for no reasons affecting the moral or religious character of the Candidate, but because (here give the reasons for departing from the regular form).**

(Signed)

Presbyter of Diocese, or Missionary Diocese of \_\_\_\_\_

Testimonial of Standing Committee.

Sec. 8. The Standing Committee, on the receipt of the certificates prescribed above and the report of the Board of Examining Chaplains prescribed in Canon III. 7, Sec. 4, and having reason to believe that all other canonical requirements have been complied with, and having no reason to suppose the existence of any sufficient obstacle, physical, mental, moral, or spiritual, may, at a meeting duly convened, a majority of all the members of the Committee consenting, recommend the Candidate for ordination by a testimonial addressed to the Bishop in the following words, viz.:

To the Right Reverend \_\_\_\_\_  
Bishop of \_\_\_\_\_

We, being a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ , and having been duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_, do testify that A. B., desiring to be ordered Deacon, hath laid before us satisfactory certificates that for the space of three years last past he hath lived a sober, honest, and godly life, and that he is loyal to the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church and does not hold anything contrary thereto. And we hereby recommend him for ordination to the Diaconate.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto set our hands this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of our Lord \_\_\_\_\_.

(Signed)

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 10.**

---

This testimonial shall be signed by all consenting to its adoption.

Sec. 9. The testimonial having been presented to the Bishop, and there being no sufficient objection on grounds physical, mental, moral, doctrinal, or spiritual, the Bishop may take order for the ordination; and at the time of the ordination he shall require the Candidate to subscribe and make, in his presence, the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution.

Declaration of belief and conformity.

Sec. 10. (a). A man of Christian character, proven fitness, and leadership in his community, who is willing to serve in the capacity of Deacon without relinquishing his secular occupation, may be proposed and recommended to the Bishop, for enrollment as a Candidate, by the Minister and Vestry of the Parish in which his service is desired, or (should the Parish be without a Minister) by the Vestry and some other Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing, or (if it is intended that the Candidate should serve outside, or apart from, an organized Parish) by one such Presbyter and six Lay Communicants of this Church in good standing who are well informed regarding the area or circumstances within which it is proposed that the Candidate should serve. This recommendation shall be in writing, and shall include a statement indicating whether the man is being proposed for the Diaconate only, or for the Diaconate and subsequently for the Priesthood. Such a person may be admitted as a Candidate upon the following conditions:

Candidacy of men who will retain secular occupations.

(1). He shall have reached the canonical age for Deacons, and attained such maturity as the Bishop, Commission on Ministry, and Standing Committee find acceptable for ordination.

Conditions.

(2). The requirements of Canon III. 2, Section 2 (c) and (d), and Sections 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10, shall be fulfilled in such manner as is pertinent to the circumstances.

(b). A Candidate so admitted may be ordained to the Diaconate at any time after six months from his admission as a Candidate, upon the following conditions:

Ordination.

(1). He shall have prepared for the Diaconate by studying the topics specified in Canon III.5, Sec. 2(a) for such time and to such extent as is judged suitable by the Bishop, after consultation with the Commission on Ministry, and with the Minister and Lay Persons who proposed and recommended the said Candidate. Similarly, after consultation with persons experienced in the area or field in which this Candidate for the Diaconate is to serve, the Bishop shall appoint such other training or practical experience as is suitable to the Candidate's occupation, his role in the community, and his ecclesiastical ministry. A record of all such training, and an evaluation of the Candidate's attainments, shall be made in writing, and kept on file.

(2). He shall be recommended for ordination to the Diaconate by the Standing Committee, as required by Sec. 5 of this Canon, except as to term of Candidacy.

(c). A Deacon ordained under the provisions of this Section may execute all the functions pertaining to the office of Deacons, subject to the general provisions of Canon III. 23. He may be assigned by the

Functions.



**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 10, 11.**

---

Ecclesiastical Authority as Minister in charge of a Congregation which is unable to receive the services of a resident Priest. At the request, or with the consent, of the Rector and Vestry, he may be assigned as an assistant Minister in one or more Parishes. He may not be transferred to another jurisdiction except upon the express request in writing of the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof.

Pension Rules do not apply.

(d). The provisions of Canon I. 7, "Of The Church Pension Fund", shall not apply, as to either assessments or benefits, to Deacons ordained under the provisions of this Section.

Advancement to Priesthood.

(e). A Deacon ordained in accordance with this Section, who is willing to serve in the capacity of Priest without relinquishing his secular occupation, may be accepted as a Candidate for the Priesthood if he has been recommended for this Order in accordance with the provisions of Sec. 10 (a) of this Canon, or if he has been so recommended subsequently. In such cases, he is to prepare for ordination to the Priesthood in accordance with the provisions of Canon III. 11, Sec. 10.

(f). Or, alternatively, a Deacon ordained in accordance with this Section may also be accepted for ordination to the Priesthood if he has passed all examinations required of other Candidates for the Priesthood and complied with all other canonical requirements precedent to such ordination. In such case the provisions of Canon I.7 where applicable shall apply to him from the date of his ordination to the Priesthood.

**CANON 11.**

**Of Ordination to the Priesthood**

Candidate to be twenty-four years of age.

Sec. 1. No one shall be ordered Priest until he be twenty-four years of age.

To be a Deacon one year, and Candidate two years, unless the time be shortened.

Sec. 2. No one shall be ordered Priest until he has been a Deacon one full year, unless it shall seem good to the Bishop, for reasonable causes, with the advice and consent of a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee, to shorten the time; nor within two years from his admission as a Candidate for Holy Orders, unless the Bishop, for urgent reasons fully stated, with the advice and consent of a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee, shall shorten the time. And in no case shall he be ordered Priest within less than one year from his admission as a Candidate for Holy Orders, nor until he has been a Deacon for at least six months.

Recommendation from Standing Committee.

Sec. 3. No Deacon shall be ordered Priest unless he be first recommended to the Bishop by the Standing Committee of the Diocese to which he belongs.

Papers to be laid before Standing Committee.

Sec. 4. In order to be recommended for ordination by the Standing Committee, the Deacon must lay before the Committee

- (1). An application therefor in writing signed by himself, which shall state the date of his birth.
- (2). A certificate from the Bishop declaring that the term of his Candidacy and the time of his service in the Diaconate have been completed; but when such certificate cannot be had, other evidence, satisfactory to the Committee, may suffice.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 11.**

---

(3). A certificate from the Minister and Vestry of the Parish where he resides, in the following words, viz.:

To the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_  
Place, \_\_\_\_\_ Date, \_\_\_\_\_  
We do certify that, after due inquiry, we are well assured and believe that the Reverend A. B., Deacon, since the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year \_\_\_\_\_, being the date of his ordination to the Diaconate (or for the space of three years last past), hath lived a sober, honest, and godly life, and hath not written, taught, or held anything contrary to the Doctrine, Discipline, or Worship of this Church. And, moreover, we think him a person worthy to be admitted to the Sacred Order of Priests.  
(Signed)

This certificate must be attested by the Minister of the Parish, or by the Clerk or Secretary of the Vestry, as follows, viz.:

I hereby certify that the Reverend A.B. is a resident of \_\_\_\_\_ Parish in \_\_\_\_\_; that the foregoing certificate was signed at a meeting of the Vestry duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_ on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, and the names attached are those of all (or a majority of all) the members of the Vestry.  
(Signed)

The Minister of \_\_\_\_\_,  
or Clerk or Secretary of Vestry.

Sec. 5. But should the Parish be without a Minister, it shall suffice that in his place the certificate be signed by some Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing, the reason for the substitution being stated in the attesting clause.

If Parish has no Minister.

Sec. 6 (a). Should there be no organized Parish at the place of residence of the Candidate, or should it be impracticable, through circumstances not affecting his moral or religious character, to obtain the signature of the Minister and Vestry, or of the Vestry, it may suffice if the certificate be signed by at least—

If there be no Parish, by whom certificate is to be signed.

- (1). One Presbyter of the Diocese in good standing; and,
- (2). Six Laymen, communicants of this Church, in good standing.

(b.) In such case, the reasons for departing from the regular form must be given in the attesting clause, which shall be signed by the same, or some other, Presbyter of this Church in good standing, and shall be in the following words, viz.:

Reasons for this form of certificate to be stated.

I hereby certify that the Laymen whose names are attached to the foregoing certificate are communicants of this Church in good standing, and that this form of certificate was used for no reasons affecting the moral or religious character of the Candidate, but because (here give the reason for departing from the regular form).  
(Signed)

Presbyter of the Diocese or Missionary Diocese of \_\_\_\_\_

Sec. 7. The Standing Committee, on the receipt of the certificates prescribed above and the report of the General Board of Examining Chaplains prescribed in Canon III. 7, Sec. 4, and having reason to believe that all other canonical requirements have been complied with,

Testimonial of Standing Committee.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 11.**

---

and having no reason to suppose the existence of any sufficient obstacle, physical, mental, moral, or spiritual, may, at a meeting duly convened, a majority of all the members of the Committee consenting, recommend the Deacon for ordination by a testimonial addressed to the Bishop in the following words, viz.:

To the Right Reverend \_\_\_\_\_  
Bishop of \_\_\_\_\_

We, being a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_ and having been duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_, do testify that the Reverend A.B., Deacon, desiring to be ordered Priest, hath laid before us satisfactory certificates that since the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

in the year \_\_\_\_\_, being the date of his ordination to the Diaconate (or for the space of three years last past), he hath lived a sober, honest, and godly life, and hath not written, taught, or held anything contrary to the Doctrine, Discipline, or Worship of this Church; and we hereby recommend him for ordination to the Priesthood.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto set our hands this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, in the year of our Lord \_\_\_\_\_.

(Signed)

This testimonial shall be signed by all consenting to its adoption.

Declaration of belief and conformity.

Sec. 8. The testimonial having been presented to the Bishop, and there being no sufficient objection on grounds physical, mental, moral, doctrinal, or spiritual, the Bishop may take order for the ordination; and at the time of the ordination he shall require the Deacon to subscribe and make, in his presence, the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution.

Evidence of his appointment to some Cure.

Sec. 9. No Deacon shall be ordered Priest until he shall have been appointed to serve in some Parochial Cure within the jurisdiction of this Church, or as a Missionary under the Ecclesiastical Authority of some Diocese, or as an officer of some Missionary Society recognized by the General Convention, or as a Chaplain of the Army or Navy of the United States, or as a Chaplain in some recognized hospital or other welfare institution, or as a Chaplain or instructor in some college or other seminary of learning, with opportunity for the exercise of his Ministry judged sufficient by the Bishop.

Of Deacons, ordained under III.10, Sec. 10, seeking Priesthood.

Study and training.

Sec. 10 (a). A Deacon who has been ordained under Canon III. 10, Sec. 10, who becomes a Candidate for the Priesthood under the provisions of Clause (e) of that Section, may prepare for the Priesthood by studying the topics specified in Canon III. 5, for such time and to such extent as is judged suitable by the Bishop after consultation with the Commission on Ministry and with the Minister and Lay Persons who proposed and recommended the said Deacon. Similarly, after consultation with persons experienced in the area or field in which this Candidate for the Priesthood is to serve, the Bishop shall appoint such other training or practical experience as is suitable to the Candidate's occupation, his role in the community, and his

## TITLE III

### CANONS 11, 12.

---

ecclesiastical ministry. A record of all such training, and an evaluation of the Candidate's attainments, shall be made in writing, and kept on file.

(b). The Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority shall satisfy himself, and the Standing Committee, that the Candidate for the Priesthood has served acceptably in the Order of Deacons for at least one year.

Service in  
Diaconate.

(c). When such requirements have been fulfilled, the Bishop, with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, may proceed to ordain the said Deacon to the Priesthood.

#### CANON 12.

##### Of Ministers Ordained in Churches Not in Communion with this Church

Sec. 1 (a). When a Minister ordained in a Church not in communion with this Church desires to be a Deacon or Priest in this Church, he shall apply to a Bishop, attaching to his written application the following:

Of Ministers who  
have not received  
ordination in this  
Church.

- (1). Evidence that he has been duly baptized with water in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost;
- (2). His letters of Ordination and satisfactory evidence that they and his other credentials are valid and authentic;
- (3). Satisfactory evidence of his moral and godly character; and that he is free from any vows or other engagements inconsistent with the exercise of Ministry in this Church;
- (4). Transcripts of his academic and theological studies;
- (5). A certificate from at least two Presbyters of this Church stating that, from personal examination, or from satisfactory evidence laid before them, they believe that his desire to leave the Communion to which he has belonged has not arisen from any circumstance unfavorable to his moral or religious character, or on account of which it may not be expedient to admit him to the exercise of the Ministry of this Church;
- (6). A certificate in the form provided in Canon III. 10, Sec. 5 (3) and (4), from the Minister and Vestry of a Parish of this Church; and
- (7). A statement of the reasons which have moved him to seek to enter the Ministry of this Church.

Certificates  
required.

(b). With regard to the fulfillment of requirements as to pre-theological education the provisions of Canon III. 2, Sec. 5 and Sec. 6 shall be applicable. The applicant shall also submit to the examinations required in Canon III. 10, Sec. 3, the result of such examination to be filed and submitted as therein required.

Sec. 2 (a). If such a Minister furnish evidence of a satisfactory theological training in his previous Communion, and have exercised his ministry therein with good repute and success for at least five years, he shall be examined by the Commission on Ministry in the following subjects:

Pre-ordination  
requirements.

- (1). Church History: the History of the Church of England, and of this Church;
- (2). Doctrine: the Church's teaching as set forth in the Creeds and the Offices of Instruction;

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 12.**

---

- (3). Liturgics: the Principles and History of Christian Worship; the Contents and Use of the Book of Common Prayer;
- (4). Practical Theology:
  - (a) The Office and Work of a Deacon and of a Priest,
  - (b) The Conduct of Public Worship,
  - (c) The Constitution and Canons of the General Convention, and of the Diocese in which he is canonically resident.
  - (d) The use of the voice in reading and speaking.
- (5). The points of Doctrine, Discipline, Polity, and Worship in which the Communion from which he has come differs from this Church. This portion of the examination shall be conducted, in part at least, by written questions and answers, and the replies kept on file for at least three years.

The Commission on Ministry may, with the consent of the Bishop, and with due notice to the applicant, examine the latter in any other subject required by Canon III. 5, Sec. 1.

(b). But if such Minister cannot furnish evidence of a satisfactory theological training in his previous Communion, or if he have not exercised his Ministry therein with good repute and success for at least five years, he shall conform to the requirements of Canon III. 5, Sec.1.

Certificates  
required.

Sec. 3 (a). Prior to being examined as heretofore provided, the applicant shall have received certificates from the Bishop and from the Standing Committee, that he is acceptable as a Minister of this Church, subject to the successful completion of said examination; but he shall not be ordained or received until, after the provision of said certificates, at least six calendar months shall have elapsed, during which period he shall undertake such studies, in a theological seminary or otherwise, as shall be directed by the Bishop with the advice of the Commission on Ministry.

(b). The Bishop, in a book to be kept for that purpose, shall enter the name of each applicant, with the fact of his approval or disapproval of the application, and the date of such entry. If he approve of the application, he shall inform the applicant of the fact, and of the date of his acceptance.

Declarations  
required.

Sec. 4. Before such Minister shall be ordained or received into the Ministry of this Church, the Bishop shall require him to promise in writing to submit himself in all things to the Discipline of this Church without recourse to any other ecclesiastical jurisdiction or foreign civil jurisdiction; and shall further require him to subscribe and make in his presence, and in the presence of two or more Presbyters, the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution.

Alternatives at  
ordination.

Sec. 5(a). Thereafter the Bishop, being satisfied of such Minister's theological attainments and soundness in the faith, may

- (1). Receive him into the Diocese as a Deacon of this Church, and, no sooner than four months thereafter, as a Priest, if he has already been ordained by a Bishop in the historic succession; or
- (2). Confirm him and make him a Deacon and, no sooner than four months thereafter, ordain him as Priest if he has not received such ordination; or

## TITLE III

### CANONS 12, 13.

---

(3). Make him a Deacon and no sooner than four months thereafter, ordain him a Priest conditionally (having baptized and confirmed him conditionally if necessary) if he has been ordained by a Bishop whose authority to convey such orders has not been recognized by this Church.

(b). In the case of an ordination pursuant to Sec. 5 (a) (2) of this Canon, the Bishop may, at the time of such ordination, read this preface to the service:

Special Prefaces  
authorized.

**A.B., who is already a minister of Christ, now desires to be made a Deacon (or ordained a Priest) in this Church. He has satisfied the Ecclesiastical Authority of this Diocese that he accepts the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church. We are about to confer upon him the grace and authority of Holy Orders as this Church has received them and requires them for the exercise of the Ministry therein.**

The letters of ordination in such cases may contain the words:

**Acknowledging the ministry which he has already received and hereby adding to that commission the grace and authority of Holy Orders as understood and required by this Church for the exercise of the Ministry.**

(c). In the case of a conditional ordination pursuant to Sec. 5 (a) (3) of this Canon, the Bishop shall at the time of such ordination, read this preface to the service:

**A.B., who has been ordained by a Bishop whose authority has not been recognized by this Church, has now satisfied the Ecclesiastical Authority of this Diocese that he accepts the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church and that he now desires conditional ordination. By this service of ordination, we propose to establish that A.B. is qualified to minister in this Church.**

Sec. 6. No one shall be ordered Deacon or received as such until he be 21 years of age. No one shall be ordered Priest or received as such until he be 24 years of age.

Age limits.

Sec. 7. Any other provisions in other Canons inconsistent with this Canon are inapplicable.

#### CANON 13.

##### **Of Ministers Ordained in Foreign Countries by Bishops in Communion with this Church**

Sec. 1 (a). A Minister declaring himself to have been ordained beyond the limits of the United States by a foreign Bishop in communion with this Church, or by a Bishop consecrated for a foreign country by Bishops of this Church under Article III. of the Constitution shall, before he be permitted to officiate in any Parish or Congregation of this Church, exhibit to the Minister, or, if there be no Minister, to the Vestry thereof, a certificate of recent date, signed by the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese that his letters of Holy Orders and other credentials are valid and authentic, and given by a Bishop in communion with this Church, and whose authority is acknowledged

Certificate  
required before  
he can officiate in  
this Church.

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 13, 14.**

---

by this Church, and also that he has exhibited to the said Ecclesiastical Authority satisfactory evidence of his moral and godly character and of his theological acquirements.

Before taking charge of a Parish.

(b). And before he shall be permitted to take charge of any Parish or Congregation, or be received into any Diocese of this Church as a Minister thereof, he shall produce to the Ecclesiastical Authority Letters Dimissory or equivalent credentials under the hand and seal of the Bishop with whose Diocese he has been last connected, which letters or credentials shall be delivered within six months from the date thereof. Before such Minister shall be so received, the Bishop shall require him to promise in writing to submit himself in all things to the Discipline of this Church, without recourse to any foreign jurisdiction, civil or ecclesiastical; and shall further require him to subscribe and make in his presence, and in the presence of two or more Presbyters, the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution. He shall also be examined by the Bishop and at least one Presbyter as to his knowledge of the history of this Church, its worship and government. The said Ecclesiastical Authority, being satisfied of his theological acquirements, may then receive him into the Diocese as a Minister of this Church; *Provided*, that such Minister shall not be entitled to hold canonical charge in any Parish or Congregation, until he shall have resided one year in the United States subsequent to the acceptance of his credentials.

Medical Examination.

(c). A Minister declaring himself to have been ordained beyond the limits of the United States by a foreign Bishop in communion with this Church, or by a Bishop consecrated for a foreign country by Bishops of this Church, under Article III. of the Constitution, shall not be accepted nor shall the Minister named therein be placed on the clergy list of this Church until such a Minister shall have submitted himself to, and satisfactorily passed, a thorough examination by a physician appointed by the Bishop. This examination shall cover the man's mental and nervous, as well as his physical condition. The form of medical report prepared by The Church Pension Fund shall be used for this purpose.

If a Deacon, to reside one year in this country.

Sec. 2. If such Minister be a Deacon, he shall not be ordered Priest until he shall have resided in the United States at least one year.

**CANON 14.**

**Of the Ordination and Consecration of Bishops**

Testimonials of Bishop-elect to be sent to Secretary of House of Deputies.

Sec. 1(a). Whenever the Church in any Diocese shall desire the ordination and consecration of a Bishop-elect, if the election shall have taken place within three months before a meeting of the General Convention, the Standing Committee of the said Diocese shall, by their President, or by some person or persons, specially appointed, forward to the Secretary of the House of Deputies evidence of the election of the Bishop-elect by the Convention of the Diocese, together with evidence of his having been duly ordered Deacon and Priest, and also a testimonial, signed by a constitutional majority of such Convention, in the following words, viz:

**We, whose names are hereunder written, fully sensible how important it is that the Sacred Order and Office of a Bishop should**

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 14.**

---

not be unworthily conferred and firmly persuaded that it is our duty to bear testimony on this solemn occasion without partiality or affection, do, in the presence of Almighty God, testify that the Reverend A.B. is not, so far as we are informed, justly liable to evil report, either for error in religion or for viciousness of life; and that we know of no impediment on account of which he ought not to be ordained and consecrated to that Holy Office. We do, moreover, jointly and severally declare that we believe him to be of such sufficiency in good learning, of such soundness in the Faith, and of such virtuous and pure manners and godly conversation, that he is apt and meet to exercise the Office of a Bishop to the honour of God and the edifying of His Church, and to be a wholesome example to the flock of Christ.

(Signed)

The Secretary of such Convention shall certify upon this testimonial that it has been signed by a constitutional majority thereof. There shall also be forwarded with the testimonial and other documents a certificate from two medical doctors, who shall be chosen by the Presiding Bishop, that they have thoroughly examined the Bishop-elect and have not discovered in his physical, mental, or nervous condition any reason why it would not be wise for him to undertake the work for which he has been chosen.

Medical examination.

The Secretary of the House of Deputies shall lay the said testimonials before the House, and if the House shall consent to the consecration of the Bishop-elect, notice of said consent, certified by the President and Secretary of said House, shall be sent to the House of Bishops, together with the testimonials aforesaid.

Notice of consent of House of Deputies to be sent to House of Bishops.

(b). If the House of Bishops consent to the consecration, the Presiding Bishop shall, without delay, notify such consent to the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing and to the Bishop-elect; and upon notice of the acceptance by the Bishop-elect of his election, the Presiding Bishop shall take order for the consecration of the said Bishop-elect either by himself or the President of the Province of which the Diocese electing is a part, and two other Bishops of this Church, or by any three Bishops of the Church to whom he may communicate the testimonials.

Presiding Bishop to take order for consecration.

In all particulars the service at the consecration of a Bishop shall be under the direction of the Bishop presiding at such consecration.

Bishop presiding at consecration to have direction of service.

(c). If the election of a Bishop shall have taken place more than three months before the meeting of the General Convention, the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing shall, by their President, or by some person or persons specially appointed, immediately send certificate of the election to the Standing Committees of the several Dioceses, together with copies of the necessary testimonials and other documents, including the medical certificate as required in Sec. 1 (a) of this Canon; and if a majority of the Standing Committees of all the Dioceses shall consent to the consecration of the Bishop-elect, the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing shall then forward the evidence of said consent, with the other necessary testimonials, to the Presiding Bishop, who shall immediately communicate the same to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction, and if a majority of

Procedure during recess of General Convention.



**TITLE III**  
**CANON 14.**

---

such Bishops shall consent to the consecration, the Presiding Bishop shall, without delay, notify such consent to the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing and to the Bishop-elect, and upon notice of his acceptance of the election, the Presiding Bishop shall take order for the consecration of the said Bishop-elect either by himself or the President of the Province of which the Diocese electing is a part and two other Bishops of this Church, or by any three Bishops of this Church to whom he may communicate the testimonials.

The evidence of the consent of the several Standing Committees shall be a testimonial in the following words, signed by a majority of the Standing Committees of all the Dioceses:

We, being a majority of all the members of the Standing Committee of \_\_\_\_\_, and having been duly convened at \_\_\_\_\_, fully sensible how important it is that the Sacred Order and Office of a Bishop should not be unworthily conferred, and firmly persuaded that it is our duty to bear testimony on this solemn occasion without partiality or affection, do, in the presence of Almighty God, testify that the Reverend A.B. is not, so far as we are informed, justly liable to evil report, either for error in religion or for viciousness of life; and that we know of no impediment on account of which he ought not to be ordained and consecrated to that Holy Office.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto set our hands this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of our Lord \_\_\_\_\_.

(Signed)

If Bishops shall not consent within three months.

If the Presiding Bishop shall not have received the consent of a majority of the Bishops within three months from the date of his notice to them, he shall then give notice of such failure to the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing.

If Standing Committees or Bishops shall not consent.

(d) In case a majority of all the Standing Committees of the several Dioceses shall not consent to the consecration of a Bishop-elect within the period of six months from the date of the notification of the election by the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing, or in case a majority of all the Bishops entitled to act in the premises shall not consent within the period of three months from the date of notification to them by the Presiding Bishop of the election, the Presiding Bishop shall declare the election null and void, and the Convention of the Diocese may then proceed to a new election.

Notification to Presiding Bishop.

(e) It shall be the duty of the Secretary of the Convention electing a Bishop, Bishop Coadjutor, or Suffragan Bishop, to inform the Presiding Bishop promptly of the name of the person elected. It shall be the duty of the Bishop-elect to notify the Presiding Bishop of his acceptance or declination of the election, at the same time as he notifies the electing Diocese.

Bishops Coadjutor.

Sec. 2 (a). When a Bishop of a Diocese is unable, by reason of age, or other permanent cause of infirmity, or by reason of the extent of Diocesan work, fully to discharge the duties of his office, a Bishop Coadjutor may be elected by and for said Diocese, who shall have the right of succession; *Provided*, that before the election of a Bishop Coadjutor for the reason of extent of Diocesan work, the consent of

Consent required.

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 14, 15.**

---

the General Convention, or during the recess thereof, the consent of a majority of the Bishops having jurisdiction and of the several Standing Committees, must be had and obtained. Before any election of a Bishop Coadjutor, the Bishop of the Diocese shall read, or cause to be read, to the Convention thereof, his written consent to such election, and in such consent he shall state the duties which he thereby assigns to the Bishop Coadjutor, when duly ordained and consecrated, and such consent shall form part of the proceedings of the Convention. The duties assigned by the Bishop to the Bishop Coadjutor in any Diocese may be enlarged by mutual consent whenever the Bishop of the Diocese may desire to assign such additional duties to the Bishop Coadjutor. In case of the inability of the Bishop of the Diocese to issue the aforesaid consent, the Standing Committee of the Diocese may request the Convention to act without such consent, and such request shall be accompanied by certificates of medical men as to the inability of the Bishop of the Diocese to issue his written consent.

Consent of Bishop and duties assigned to be specified.

(b). In the case of a Bishop Coadjutor, the grounds for his election, as stated in the record of the Convention, shall be communicated, with the other required testimonials, to the General Convention, or to the Standing Committees and the Presiding Bishop.

Grounds for election to be communicated.

(c). In the case of application for the ordination and consecration of a Bishop Coadjutor, the Standing Committee shall forward to the Presiding Bishop, in addition to the evidence and testimonials required by the preceding Section, a certificate of the Presiding Officer and Secretary of the Convention that every requirement of this Section has been complied with.

Certificate that every requirement has been complied with.

(d). There shall not be in any Diocese at the same time more than one Bishop Coadjutor.

Only one Bishop Coadjutor in a Diocese.

Sec. 3. It shall be lawful, within six months prior to the effective date of the resignation or retirement of a Bishop from his jurisdiction, for the said Bishop, with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, to call a special meeting of the Convention of the Diocese to elect a successor; *Provided*, that if the Convention is to meet in regular session meanwhile, it may hold the election during such regular session. The proceedings incident to preparation for the ordination and consecration of such successor shall be as provided in Section 1 of this Canon; but the Presiding Bishop shall not take order for the consecration to be on any date prior to that upon which the resignation is to become effective.

Election of successor, prior to Bishop's resignation or retirement.

Proviso.

Sec. 4. No one shall be ordained and consecrated Bishop unless he shall at the time subscribe, in the presence of the ordaining and consecrating Bishops, the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution.

Declaration of belief and conformity.

**CANON 15.**

**Of Missionary Bishops**

Sec. 1 (a). The election of a person to be a Bishop in a Missionary Diocese shall be held in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Constitution and Canons of the said Diocese, and, except as hereinafter provided, pursuant to the provisions of Canon III.14.

Election by Convention of Diocese.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 15.**

---

May request  
Synod of  
Province to elect.

(b) The Convention of a Missionary Diocese may, in lieu of electing a Bishop, request that such election be made on its behalf by the Synod of the Province, or the Regional Council of Churches in communion with this Church, of which the Diocese is a member, as provided in paragraph (c) of this Section; or, it may request that such election be made on its behalf by the House of Bishops, as provided in Sec. 2(a) of this Canon.

Certificate.

(c) In the event of an election of a Bishop by the Provincial Synod, or by a Regional Council of Churches, as provided in the foregoing paragraph (b), a Certificate of the Election, signed by the presiding officer and the secretary of the Synod or Council, and a Testimonial in the form required in Canon III.14.1(a), signed by a constitutional majority of the Synod or Council, shall be transmitted by its presiding officer to the Standing Committee of the Missionary Diocese on whose behalf such election was made. The Standing Committee shall thereupon proceed as set forth in Canon III.14.1, the above Certificate of Election and Testimonial serving in lieu of the evidence of election and testimonial there required.

May ask House  
of Bishops to  
elect.

Sec. 2(a). The House of Bishops may, upon the request of the Convention of a Missionary Diocese, as provided in Sec. 1(b) of this Canon, elect a person to be a Bishop therein. Such choice shall be subject to confirmation by the House of Deputies during the session of the General Convention, and at other times to confirmation by a majority of the Standing Committees of the several Dioceses. The medical certificate as required in Canon III.14.1(a) shall also be required of Missionary Bishops-elect.

Synod of  
Province may  
nominate.

(b). When the House of Bishops is to elect a Bishop for a Missionary Diocese within a given Province, the President of the Province may convene the Synod of the Province prior to the meeting of the House of Bishops at which a Bishop for such Missionary Diocese is to be elected. The Synod of the Province may thereupon nominate not exceeding three persons to the House of Bishops for that office. It shall be the duty of the President of the Province to transmit such nominations, if any be made, to the Presiding Officer of the House of Bishops, who shall, three weeks before the meeting of the House of Bishops, communicate the same to the Bishops, along with other nominations that have been made, in accordance with the Rules of Order of the House. Each Province containing a Missionary Diocese shall, by Ordinance, provide the manner of convening the Synod and making such nomination.

Evidence of such  
election.

(c). The evidence of such choice shall be a certificate signed by the Bishop presiding in the House of Bishops and by its Secretary, with a testimonial, or certified copy thereof, signed by a majority of the Bishops of the House, in the form required in Canon III. 14, Sec. 1(a), which shall be sent to the Presiding Officer of the House of Deputies, or to the Standing Committees of the several Dioceses, if the General Convention be not in session.

Approval of  
House of  
Deputies or of  
Standing  
Committees  
required.

(d) When the Presiding Bishop shall have received a certificate signed by the President and Secretary of the House of Deputies (or certificates signed by the Presidents and Secretaries of a majority of

### TITLE III

#### CANON 15.

---

the Standing Committees as the case may be), that the election has been approved, and shall have received notice of the acceptance by the Bishop-elect of his election, he shall take order for the consecration of the said Bishop-elect either by himself and two other Bishops of this Church, or by any three Bishops of this Church to whom he may communicate the certificates and testimonial.

Sec. 3. In the case of the permanent disability of the Bishop of a Missionary Diocese, where the said Bishop shall not have submitted his resignation of his jurisdiction, the Presiding Bishop shall, upon certification of the said permanent disability by at least three reputable physicians, declare the jurisdiction vacant.

How jurisdiction may be declared vacant.

Sec. 4. When the Bishop of a Missionary Diocese is unable, by reason of age or other permanent cause of disability, fully to discharge the duties of his office, a Bishop Coadjutor may be elected by the said Diocese, subject to the provisions of Canon III.14.2.

Provision for Bishop Coadjutor in Missionary Diocese.

Sec. 5. Any Bishop or Bishops elected and consecrated under this Canon shall be entitled to a seat and vote in the House of Bishops, and shall be eligible to the office of Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor or Suffragan Bishop in any organized Diocese within the United States; *Provided*, that such Bishop shall not be so eligible within five years from the date of his consecration, except to the Office of Bishop of a Diocese formed in whole or in part out of his Missionary Diocese.

Seat in the House of Bishops.

Eligible for election.

Proviso.

Sec. 6(a). When a Diocese, entitled to the choice of a Bishop, shall elect as its Diocesan, or as its Bishop Coadjutor, or as Suffragan Bishop, a Missionary Bishop of this Church, if such election shall have taken place within three months before a meeting of the General Convention, evidence thereof shall be laid before each House of the General Convention, and the concurrence of each House, and its express consent, shall be necessary to the validity of said election, and shall complete the same; so that the Bishop thus elected shall be thereafter the Bishop of the Diocese which has elected him.

Election of a Missionary Bishop as a Diocesan, Coadjutor or Suffragan.

Concurrence of General Convention.

(b). If the said election have taken place more than three months before a meeting of the General Convention, the above process may be adopted, or the following instead thereof, viz.: The Standing Committee of the Diocese electing shall give duly certified evidence of the election to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction, and to the Standing Committee of every Diocese. On receiving notice of the concurrence of a majority of such Bishops and of the Standing Committees in the election, and their express consent thereto, the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing shall transmit notice thereof to the Ecclesiastical Authority of every Diocese within the United States; which notice shall state what Bishops and what Standing Committees have consented to the election. On receiving this notice the Presiding Bishop shall certify to the Secretary of the House of Bishops the altered status and style of the Bishop so elected.

Election during recess.

Consent of Bishops and Standing Committees.

The Standing Committee of such Diocese shall transmit to every Congregation thereof, to be publicly read therein, a notice of the election thus completed, and also cause public notice thereof to be given in such other way as they may think proper.

Notice of election.

# TITLE III

## CANONS 15, 16.

---

Standing Committee becomes Ecclesiastical Authority in vacancy.

Sec. 7. In the event of a vacancy in the episcopate of a Missionary Diocese, on account of death, resignation, or other cause, the Standing Committee shall become the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof until the vacancy is filled.

In Area Mission charge devolves on Presiding Bishop.

In the event of a vacancy in the office of Bishop assigned jurisdiction in an Area Mission, the charge thereof shall devolve upon the Presiding Bishop, with the power of appointing some other Bishop as his substitute in such charge, until the vacancy is filled by the House of Bishops.

### CANON 16.

#### Of Suffragan Bishops

How elected.

Sec. 1. A Suffragan Bishop shall be elected in accordance with the Canons enacted in each Diocese for the election of a Bishop. But the initiative shall always be taken by the Bishop of the Diocese asking for the assistance of a Suffragan.

Consent of General Convention or Bishops and Standing Committees necessary.

Sec. 2 (a). Before the election of a Suffragan Bishop in a Diocese, the consent of the General Convention, or during the recess thereof the consent of a majority of the Bishops having jurisdiction and of the several Standing Committees, must be had and obtained.

(b). Whenever the Church in any Diocese shall desire the ordination and consecration of a Suffragan-Bishop-elect, subsequent proceedings in accordance with the provisions of Canon III. 14, Sec. 1, shall be taken.

(c). If the consents required by Canon III. 14, Sec. 1, are not received as therein prescribed, or if the Suffragan-Bishop-elect decline his election, the Convention of the Diocese may then proceed to a new election.

Not more than two in one Diocese.

Sec. 3. There shall not at any time be more than two Suffragan Bishops holding office in and for any Diocese, save by special consent of the General Convention previously obtained.

Suffragan for Missionary Diocese.

Sec. 4. A Suffragan Bishop may be elected and consecrated for any Missionary Diocese in accordance with the provisions of Sec. 2 of this Canon, and subject to all the provisions thereof.

Assistant of the Bishop.

Sec. 5. A Suffragan Bishop shall act, in all respects, as the assistant of the Bishop of the Diocese, and under his direction.

Resignation required at age seventy-two years.

Sec. 6 (a). Every Suffragan Bishop, upon attaining the age of seventy-two years, shall forthwith tender his resignation from his position by sending it to the Presiding Bishop, who shall immediately communicate the same to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction and shall declare the said Bishop's resignation accepted, effective at a designated date not later than three months from the date of such resignation.

Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops.

Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance.

(b). The Presiding Bishop shall communicate to the resigning Bishop the fact of the acceptance of his resignation and the termination of his position effective as of the date fixed; and, in the case of a Suffragan of a Diocese, shall certify the same to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 16.**

---

Diocese concerned. He shall also order the Secretary of the House of Bishops to record the same effective as of the date fixed, to be incorporated in the Journal of the House.

Record to be made.

At each meeting of the General Convention, it shall be the duty of the Presiding Officer of the House of Bishops to communicate to the House of Deputies, when in session, a list of such resignations which have been accepted since the preceding meeting of the General Convention.

House of Deputies to be notified.

(c). If any Suffragan Bishop should for any reason fail to submit his resignation upon attaining the age of seventy-two years, as provided in Clause (a) above, the Presiding Bishop shall certify that fact to the House of Bishops. The House of Bishops shall then declare the said Bishop's position terminated, effective at a date not later than three months from the date of such declaration; and shall order the Presiding Bishop's certificate and its own declaration and action to be recorded in its Journal. It shall then be the duty of the Presiding Officer of the House of Bishops to pronounce such position terminated, and to communicate the fact to the House of Deputies, if in session, and to the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese.

Procedure in case of failure to resign at age seventy-two.

(d). The tenure of office of a Suffragan Bishop shall not be terminated on the death or removal of the Bishop of the Diocese. A Suffragan Bishop may, at any time, resign his position as Suffragan of a Diocese with the consent of a majority of the Bishops of this Church having jurisdiction under the procedure set out in Canon III. 18, Sec. 8, so far as it applies.

Tenure of Office.

May resign.

A Suffragan Bishop whose resignation has been accepted shall exercise episcopal functions only as he may be authorized by the Ecclesiastical Authority of a Diocese or of an Area Mission.

Limitation on exercise of episcopal functions.

Sec. 7 (a). Whenever a Suffragan Bishop shall be elected Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor of a Diocese or Bishop of a Missionary Diocese, if such election shall have taken place within three months before a meeting of the General Convention, evidence thereof shall be laid before each House of the General Convention and the concurrence of each House and its express consent shall be necessary to the validity of said election, and shall complete the same, so that the Bishop thus elected shall be thereafter the Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor of the Diocese which has elected him, or Bishop of the Missionary Diocese, as the case may be.

May be elected Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor.

Consent necessary to validity of election.

(b). If the said election has taken place more than three months before a meeting of the General Convention, the above process may be adopted, or the following instead thereof, viz.:

Alternative procedure.

The Standing Committee of the Diocese electing, or the Secretary of the House of Bishops, as the case may be, shall give duly certified evidence of the election to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction and to the Standing Committee of every Diocese.

On receiving notice of the concurrence of a majority of the Bishops and of the Standing Committees in the election, and their express consent thereto, the Standing Committee of the Diocese concerned or the Secretary of the House of Bishops, as the case may be, shall transmit notice thereof to the Presiding Bishop and to the

## TITLE III

### CANONS 16, 17.

---

Ecclesiastical Authority of every Diocese; which notice shall state what Bishops and what Standing Committees have consented to the election. On receiving this notice the Presiding Bishop shall certify to the Secretary of the House of Bishops the altered status and style of the Bishop so elected.

If the Presiding Bishop shall not have received the consent of a majority of the Bishops within three months from the date of his notice to them, he shall then give notice of such failure to the Standing Committee of the Diocese electing.

Cannot be Rector.

Sec. 8. No Suffragan Bishop, while acting as such, shall be Rector or settled Minister in charge of a Parish or Congregation.

#### CANON 17.

##### Of the Consecration of Bishops for Foreign Lands.

Statement of facts to be presented to the Presiding Bishop.

Sec. 1. Pursuant to the provisions of Article III. of the Constitution, the following conditions are prescribed as necessary to be fulfilled before the Presiding Bishop of this Church shall take order for a Consecration to the Episcopate authorized by that Article.

(1). A person seeking to be ordained and consecrated a Bishop for a foreign land, within the purport of Article III. of the Constitution, must present to the Presiding Bishop of this Church a statement in writing subscribed by him setting forth his name, and the date and place of his birth; his Ecclesiastical and Civil status; whether he is in Priest's Orders, and, if so, the time and place and Episcopal source of his admission thereto, and to the Diaconate; the fact of his election or appointment, by a body of Christian people in a foreign land, to be, when duly ordained and consecrated, their Bishop; the corporate name under which such body is or desires and intends to be known as a distinct part of the Catholic Church of Christ; and the land wherein and the civil government under which it claims and purposes to exercise its jurisdiction as such; that the position of this body of Christian people in the land wherein they dwell is such as to justify its distinct organization as a Church therein; that the members of that body will receive the person consecrated for them by the Episcopate of this Church as a true and lawful Chief Pastor, will suitably maintain him as such, and will render to him all due canonical obedience in the exercise of his proper Episcopal functions; that by the lawful authority recognized in the body applying through him for the Episcopate there has been prescribed for use in that body a Book of Offices containing the Creeds commonly called the Apostles' and Nicene Creeds, together with forms for the Administration of the Sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's Supper, an Ordinal, an Office for the Administration of Confirmation by the Laying on of Hands, and an Order for the public reading of the Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments, in which Book the Faith and Order of the Church, as this Church hath received the same, are clearly set forth and established as the Faith and Order of the Church in which the Episcopate is as aforesaid desired to be settled and maintained; and that the person presenting himself for consecration is, in his life and teaching, in entire conformity with the principles of such Faith and Order, that he is not justly liable to evil report for error in religion or viciousness of life,

## TITLE III

### CANON 17.

---

and that he has no knowledge of any impediment on account of which he ought not to be consecrated to the Office of a Bishop.

(2). In case a Bishop should already have been consecrated for a foreign land under the provisions of Article III. of the Constitution, and application should be made for the consecration of a second or of a third Bishop for the same country, the judgment in writing of the Bishop or Bishops exercising jurisdiction in that land concerning the proposed consecration shall be presented to the Presiding Bishop together with the papers required in the foregoing Clause.

Consecration of second or third Bishop.

(3). The applicant making the statement required in Clause (1) shall with it present to the Presiding Bishop evidence fully substantiating the said statement in every particular thereof; and shall make such further statement, supported by such further evidence, as the Presiding Bishop may in the premises deem to be desirable or essential.

Evidence substantiating such facts to be presented.

(4). If the Presiding Bishop shall deem the statement so submitted, with the evidence substantiating the same, sufficient to justify the consideration of the application by the Bishops of this Church, he shall lay the whole record embodying such statement and evidence before the House of Bishops on the next occasion on which they may be duly convened as such, with the presence of a majority of all the Bishops of this Church entitled to vote in that House.

Presiding Bishop to lay the whole record before the House of Bishops if evidence sufficient.

Sec. 2. If after consideration of the statement and evidence so presented, and of any other evidence of which they may be cognizant, a majority of the Bishops of this Church entitled to vote in the House of Bishops shall consent to the proposed ordination and consecration under the provisions of Article III. of the Constitution, the Presiding Bishop shall take order therefor in the same manner as order is prescribed to be taken by him in the consecration of Bishops in this Church, the Order of Consecration being conformed, as nearly as may be in the judgment of the Bishops consecrating, to that used in this Church.

Presiding Bishop to take order for the consecration.

Sec. 3. If a majority of the Bishops of this Church entitled to vote in the House of Bishops shall have given their consent to the proposed ordination and consecration as required in Section 2 of this Canon, but the person seeking such ordination and consecration shall not have received Episcopal ordination to the Diaconate and to the Priesthood, the Presiding Bishop, or some Bishop of this Church appointed by him for that purpose, shall proceed to ordain such person to the Diaconate and to the Priesthood, and may do so on successive days, the Order of Ordination being conformed, as nearly as may be in the judgment of the Bishop ordaining, to that used in this Church.

Provision for prior ordination to the Diaconate and the Priesthood.

Sec. 4. Immediately after a consecration as herein provided shall have taken place, the Presiding Bishop shall lodge the original record of the statement and evidence above required, together with such other papers and documents as he may deem essential to the true and complete history of the proceedings, with the Registrar of the General Convention for preservation among the Archives of this Church.

Record to be delivered to Registrar.



# TITLE III

## CANON 18.

---

### CANON 18.

#### Of Duties of Bishops

Bishop to reside in his jurisdiction.

Sec. 1. It shall be the duty of every Bishop having jurisdiction in a Diocese of this Church, to reside within the limits of his jurisdiction; nor shall he absent himself therefrom for more than three months without the consent of the Convention or the Standing Committee of the Diocese.

Bishop to visit each church every three years.

Sec. 2 (a). Every Bishop shall visit the Congregations within his jurisdiction at least once in three years, for the purposes of examining their condition, inspecting the behavior of the Clergy, administering Confirmation, preaching the Word, and at his discretion celebrating the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper. At every visitation it shall be the duty of the Bishop to examine the records required by Canon III. 20, Section 3.

Council of Conciliation.

(b). If a Bishop shall for three years have declined to visit a Parish or Congregation, the Minister and Vestry [or the Corporation], or the Bishop, may apply to the Presiding Bishop to appoint the five Bishops in charge of Dioceses who live nearest to the Diocese in which such Church or Congregation may be situated as a Council of Conciliation, who shall amicably determine all matters of difference between the parties, and each party shall conform to the decision of the Council in the premises, *Provided*, that in case of any subsequent trial of either party for failure to conform to such decision, any constitutional or canonical right of the defendant in the premises may be pleaded and established as a sufficient defense, notwithstanding such former decision; and, *Provided, further*, that in any case the Bishop may at any time apply for such Council of Conciliation.

Bishop to keep record.

(c). Every Bishop shall keep a record of all his official acts, which record shall be the property of the Diocese, and shall be transmitted to his successor.

Charges and Pastoral Letters.

Sec. 3. Every Bishop shall deliver, from time to time at his discretion, a Charge to the Clergy of his jurisdiction, and may, from time to time, address to the people of his jurisdiction Pastoral Letters on points of Christian doctrine, worship, or manners, which he may require the Clergy to read to their Congregations.

Bishop to deliver a statement at every annual Convention.

Sec. 4. At every Annual Convention the Bishop shall make a statement of the affairs of the Diocese since the last meeting of the Convention; the names of the churches which he has visited; the number of persons confirmed; the names of those who have been received as Candidates for Holy Orders, and of those who have been ordained, and of those who have been by him suspended or deposed from the Ministry; the changes by death, removal, or otherwise, which have taken place among the Clergy; and all matters tending to throw light upon the affairs of the Diocese; which statement shall be inserted in the Journal.

Ecclesiastical Authority in case of a Bishop's absence.

Sec. 5. It shall be the duty of a Bishop, whenever leaving his Diocese for the space of six calendar months, to authorize, by writing, under his hand and seal, the Bishop Coadjutor, or, should there be none, the Standing Committee of the Diocese, to act as the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof during his absence. The Bishop Coadjutor, or,

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 18.**

---

should there be none, the Standing Committee, may become at any time the Ecclesiastical Authority upon the written request of the Bishop, and continue to act as such until the request be revoked by him in writing.

Sec. 6 (a). Any Bishop of this Church may, on the invitation of the Convention or of the Standing Committee of any Diocese where there is no Bishop, or where the Bishop is for the time under a disability to perform episcopal offices by reason of a judicial sentence, visit and perform episcopal offices in that Diocese, or in any part thereof; and this invitation may be for a stated period, and may be at any time revoked.

Any Bishop may be invited to perform episcopal offices in a vacant Diocese.

(b). A Diocese without a Bishop, or of which the Bishop is for the time under a disability by reason of a judicial sentence, may, by its Convention, be placed under the provisional charge and authority of the Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor of another Diocese, who shall by that act be authorized to perform all the duties and offices of the Bishop of the Diocese so vacant or whose Bishop is under disability, until, in the case of a vacant Diocese a Bishop be duly elected and consecrated for the same; or in the case of a Diocese whose Bishop is disabled, until the disqualification be removed; or, until, in either case, the said act of the Convention be revoked.

Convention may place a vacant Diocese under charge of a Bishop.

(c). A Diocese, while under the provisional charge of a Bishop, shall not invite any other Bishop to perform any episcopal duty or exercise authority.

No other Bishop to be invited.

Sec. 7 (a). Every Bishop and every Bishop Coadjutor and every Missionary Bishop, upon attaining the age of seventy-two years, shall forthwith tender his resignation from his jurisdiction, as required by Section 9 of Article II. of the Constitution, by sending it to the Presiding Bishop, who shall immediately communicate the same to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction and shall declare the said Bishop's resignation accepted, effective at a designated date not later than three months from the date of such resignation.

To resign jurisdiction at age seventy-two.

(b). The Presiding Bishop shall communicate to the resigning Bishop the fact of the acceptance of his resignation and the termination of his jurisdiction effective as of the date fixed; and, in the case of a Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor of a Diocese, shall certify the same to the Standing Committee of the Diocese concerned. He shall also order the Secretary of the House of Bishops to record the same, effective as of the date fixed, to be incorporated in the Journal of the House.

Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops.

Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance.

(c). If any Bishop should for any reason fail to submit his resignation upon attaining the age of seventy-two years, as provided in Clause (a) above, the Presiding Bishop shall certify that fact to the House of Bishops. The House of Bishops shall then declare the said Bishop's jurisdiction terminated, effective at a date not later than three months from the date of declaration; and shall order the Presiding Bishop's certificate and its own declaration and action to be recorded in its Journal. It shall then be the duty of the Presiding Officer of the House of Bishops to pronounce such jurisdiction terminated, effective as of the date fixed, and to communicate the fact to the House of Deputies, if in session, and to the Ecclesiastical Authority of each Diocese.

Record to be made.

Procedure in case of failure to resign at age seventy-two.

## TITLE III

### CANON 18.

---

A Bishop desiring to resign.

Sec. 8 (a). If the Bishop of a Diocese, or a Bishop Coadjutor, shall desire to resign his jurisdiction, he shall send in writing to the Presiding Bishop his resignation with the reasons therefor. This communication shall be sent at least thirty days before the date set for a regular or a special meeting of the House of Bishops. The Presiding Bishop shall without delay send a copy of the communication to every Bishop of this Church having ecclesiastical jurisdiction, and also to the Standing Committee of the Bishop desiring to resign, in order that the Standing Committee may on behalf of the Diocese be heard either in person or by correspondence upon the subject. The House during its session shall investigate the whole case, and by a majority of those present accept or refuse the resignation.

Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops.

(b). If said resignation shall have been tendered more than three months before a regular or special meeting of the House of Bishops, the Presiding Bishop shall communicate the same, together with any statement from the Standing Committee of the Diocese concerned, to every Bishop of this Church having jurisdiction; and if a majority of such Bishops shall consent to the resignation, the Presiding Bishop shall, without delay, notify the resigning Bishop and the Standing Committee of the Diocese concerned, of the acceptance of such resignation and the termination of said Bishop's jurisdiction, effective as of the date fixed. He shall also order the Secretary of the House of Bishops to record the same, effective as of the date fixed, to be incorporated in the Journal of the House.

Consent required.

Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance.

Record to be made.

Resignation of a Missionary Bishop.

(c). The House of Bishops may accept the resignation of a Missionary Bishop at any session of the House by a vote of a majority of those present; *Provided*, that, in case the resignation be sent to the Presiding Bishop more than three months before a regular or special meeting of the House of Bishops, the Presiding Bishop shall follow the procedure set out in Clause (b) above so far as it applies.

Notice of resignations sent to House of Deputies.

(d). At each meeting of the General Convention, it shall be the duty of the Presiding Officer of the House of Bishops to communicate to the House of Deputies, when in session, a list of the resignations which have been accepted since the preceding meeting of the General Convention.

Retiring allowance for resigned Bishops.

(e). Every Missionary Bishop whose resignation for cause of age or disability has been accepted shall receive from the Executive Council a retiring allowance of six thousand dollars *per annum*, less whatever allowance such Bishop may receive from The Church Pension Fund. Such retiring allowance shall be reviewed at each meeting of the General Convention and may be revised whenever such retired Bishop shall receive a regular stipend from any ecclesiastical employment.

(f). Every Missionary Bishop, and every Bishop holding an office created by the General Convention, whose salary is paid by the Executive Council, whose resignation for reasons of policy or strategy, or for reasons beyond his control, has been accepted, and who has reached retirement age, or who has suffered total disability, shall receive from the Executive Council a retiring allowance to be paid by the Treasurer of the Executive Council in an amount to be fixed by the Executive Council.

### TITLE III

#### CANONS 18, 19, 20.

---

Sec. 9 (a). A Bishop whose resignation has been accepted may perform episcopal acts at the request of any Bishop of this Church, having ecclesiastical jurisdiction within the limits of his jurisdiction. He may also be given an honorary seat in the Convention of the Diocese, with voice, but without vote, and an honorary seat in the Cathedral of the Diocese, if there be one, or such honorary appointment as may be designated by the Convention of the Diocese with the consent of the Bishop. He shall report all ministerial acts to the Bishop and to the Diocese in which such acts are performed.

When a Bishop who has resigned may perform episcopal acts.

(b). A Bishop who ceases to have episcopal charge shall still be subject in all matters to the Canons and authority of the General Convention.

To be still subject to Canons.

(c). A Bishop who has resigned his jurisdiction with the consent of the House of Bishops, may, at the discretion of the Bishop of the Diocese in which he chooses to reside, be enrolled among the Clergy of that Diocese, and become subject to its Canons and regulations; and if he accept any pastoral charge or ministerial appointment within the Diocese he may be accorded a seat and vote in the Diocesan Convention according to its canonical provisions for the qualification of Presbyters. The same shall apply to a resigned Bishop who continues to reside within the jurisdiction in which he formerly served as Bishop; *Provided*, that the Bishop seeking to be counted among the Clergy of a Diocese and to sit in its Diocesan Convention is not at the same time exercising his right (under Article I., Section 2) to vote in the House of Bishops.

May be enrolled among the Clergy of Diocese of his choice.

#### CANON 19.

##### Of Duties of Missionary Bishops

Sec. 1. Missionary Bishops shall exercise jurisdiction in Missionary Dioceses and in Area Missions, in conformity with the Constitution and Canons of this Church, and under such conditions and agreements, not inconsistent therewith, as the House of Bishops, or the General Convention, may prescribe.

Where a Missionary Bishop may exercise jurisdiction.

Sec. 2. Every such Bishop shall report annually to the Presiding Bishop his proceedings, and the state and condition of the Church within his jurisdiction, such report to be transmitted by the Presiding Bishop to the Executive Council.

Missionary Bishops to report.

#### CANON 20.

##### Of Ministers and Their Duties

Sec. 1 (a). The control of the worship and the spiritual jurisdiction of the Parish, are vested in the Rector, subject to the Rubrics of the Book of Common Prayer, the Canons of the Church, and the godly counsel of the Bishop. All other Ministers of the Parish, by whatever name they may be designated, are to be regarded as under the authority of the Rector.

Control of the worship and spiritual jurisdiction.

(b). For the purposes of his office and for the full and free discharge of all functions and duties pertaining thereto, the Rector shall, at all times, be entitled to the use and control of the Church and Parish buildings with the appurtenances and furniture thereof.

Control of Church and Parish buildings.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 20.**

---

Priest in charge to have control in a Missionary Cure.

(c). In a Missionary Cure the control and responsibility belong to the Priest who has been duly appointed to the charge thereof, subject to the authority of the Bishop.

Duties of Ministers in charge of Parishes or Cures.

Sec. 2 (a). It shall be the duty of Ministers of this Church who have charge of Parishes or Cures to be diligent in instructing the children in the Catechism, and from time to time to examine them in the same publicly before the Congregation. They shall also, by stated catechetical lectures and instruction, inform the youth and others in the Holy Scriptures and the Doctrines, Polity, History, and Liturgy of the Church. They shall also instruct all persons in their Parishes and Cures concerning all the missionary work of the Church at home and abroad, and give suitable opportunities for offerings to maintain that work.

Duty at Baptisms of infants and children.

(b). It shall be the duty of Ministers before baptizing infants or children to prepare the sponsors by instructing both the parents and the Godparents concerning the significance of Holy Baptism, the responsibilities of parents and Godparents for the Christian training of the baptized child, and how these obligations may properly be discharged.

Duty in reference to Bishop's visitation.

(c). It shall be the duty of Ministers to prepare young persons and others for Confirmation; and on notice being received from the Bishop of his intention to visit any church, which notice shall be at least one month before the intended visitation, the Minister shall announce the fact to the Congregation on the first Sunday after the receipt of such notice; and he shall be ready to present for Confirmation such persons as he shall judge to be qualified, and shall deliver to the Bishop a list of the names of those to be confirmed.

At Bishop's visitation to give information of the state of the Congregation.

(d). At every visitation it shall be the duty of the Minister, and of the Churchwardens, or Vestrymen, or of some other officer, to exhibit to the Bishop the Parish Register and to give information to him of the state of the Congregation, spiritual and temporal, under such heads as shall have been previously signified to them, in writing, by the Bishop.

Alms and offerings to the poor.

(e). The Alms and Contributions, not otherwise specifically designated, at the Administration of the Holy Communion on one Sunday in each calendar month, and other offerings for the poor, shall be deposited with the Minister of the Parish or with such Church officer as shall be appointed by him, to be applied by the Minister, or under his superintendence, to such pious and charitable uses as shall by him be thought fit. During a vacancy the Vestry shall appoint a responsible person to serve as Almoner.

Almoner.

Pastoral Letters.

(f). Whenever the House of Bishops shall put forth a Pastoral Letter, it shall be the duty of every Minister having a pastoral charge to read it to his Congregation on some occasion of public worship on a Lord's Day, or to cause copies of the same to be distributed to the members of his Parish or Congregation, not later than one month after the receipt of the same.

Position Papers.

(g). Whenever the House of Bishops shall adopt a Position Paper, it may by its own vote require the same procedure for communication of the contents of the Paper to the membership of the Church as is

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 20.**

---

required in the case of a Pastoral Letter as provided in Clause (f) above.

Sec. 3 (a). It shall be the duty of every Minister of this Church to record in the Parish Register all Baptisms, Confirmations, Marriages, Burials, and the names of all Communicants within his Cure.

To keep a register of official acts.

(b). The registry of every Baptism shall be signed by the officiating Minister.

Register of baptisms to be signed by officiant.

(c). Every Minister of this Church in charge of a congregation shall have recorded in the Parish Register a list of all persons who have received Holy Baptism; and a list of all persons who have received Confirmation. He shall indicate upon the Parish Register each year the names of those who have died in the past year or whose names have been removed by letter of transfer. He shall also indicate (1) those whose domicile is unknown, and (2) those whose domicile is known but are inactive. He shall maintain as far as practicable a list of all families and persons within his Cure, which list shall remain in the Parish for the use of his successor.

Data to be recorded in Parish Register.

Sec. 4 (a). A Minister of this Church desiring to enter other than ecclesiastical employment, without relinquishing his Ministry, shall make his desire known to the Bishop or the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he is canonically resident. The Bishop, with the advice and consent of the Standing Committee, after satisfying himself and them that the applicant will have and use, opportunities for the exercise of Christian Ministry, may give his approval, on the following condition: the Minister shall report annually, in writing, in a manner prescribed by the Bishop, his occasional services, as provided in Canon I. 5, Sec. 1.

Procedure for leaving ecclesiastical employment, but retaining Ministry.

Condition.

(b). Any such Minister who omits, for a period of two years, to comply with the above provision, may be removed by the Bishop from the roll of clergy canonically resident in the said Bishop's Diocese and transferred to the Special List maintained by the Secretary of the House of Bishops, as provided in Canon IV. 11, Section 2, on the following conditions:

Penalty for omitting reporting.

1. The Bishop shall give the Minister sixty days' written notice by registered or certified mail of his intention.
2. If, within the sixty-day period, the Minister shall report to the Bishop as provided in Section 4 (a) of this Canon, the Minister shall be retained on the roll of clergy canonically resident in the said Bishop's Diocese.

Grace period.

(c). Any such Minister, removing to another jurisdiction, shall present himself to the Bishop of that jurisdiction within two months of his arrival in the jurisdiction. The Minister shall fulfill the following conditions:

Procedure on moving to other jurisdiction.

1. He shall officiate or preach in that jurisdiction only under the terms of Section 7 of this Canon.
2. He shall in writing notify the Bishop of the Diocese of his canonical residence, within sixty days of said removal.

If the Minister fails to comply with these conditions, the Bishop of the Diocese of his canonical residence may, upon sixty days' written

Penalty.

# TITLE III

## CANON 20.

---

notice, transfer the Minister to the Special List of the Secretary of the House of Bishops.

Options for Minister removing to different jurisdiction.

(d). Any such Minister, removing to another jurisdiction, shall notify both the Bishop of the Diocese of his canonical residence and the Bishop of the jurisdiction in which he resides, as to which of the following options he prefers:

1) Retain canonical residence.

1. The Minister may request to remain canonically resident in his present Diocese. In such case, the Bishop of that Diocese shall retain the Minister on his roll of clergy as long as the Minister fulfills the requirements of Section 4 (a) of this Canon.

2) Request Letters Dimissory.

2. The Minister may request to have his canonical residence transferred to the jurisdiction of his civil residence. In such case, the Minister shall, before requesting Letters Dimissory, secure a statement, in writing, from the Bishop of such jurisdiction (who may consult with his Council of Advice in the matter) that he is willing to receive such a Minister and to enroll him among the clergy of his Diocese; and NOTE, that the provisions of Section 6 (d) of this Canon shall not apply in such a case.

3) Request removal to Special List.

3. The Minister may request the Bishop of the Diocese of his canonical residence that his name be placed on the Special List maintained by the Secretary of the House of Bishops. If the Minister complies with the requirements of Section 4 (a) of this Canon by reporting annually to the Presiding Bishop, he shall continue to be held as a Minister in good standing in this Church.

Not to officiate in another's Cure without consent.

Sec. 5 (a). No Minister of this Church shall officiate, either by preaching, reading prayers in public worship, or by performing any other priestly or ministerial function, in the Parish, or within the Cure, of another Minister, without the consent of the Minister of that Parish or Cure; or of one of its Churchwardens if, in his absence or disability, the Minister fail to provide for the stated services of such Parish or Cure.

In case there are two or more Congregations or churches in one Cure.

If there be two or more Congregations or Churches in one Cure, as provided by Canon I. 12, Sec. 3 (b), the consent of the majority of the Ministers of such Congregations or Churches, or of the Bishop, shall be sufficient; *Provided*, that nothing in this Section shall be construed to prevent any Clergyman of this Church from officiating, with the consent of a Minister, in the Church or place of public worship used by the Congregation of such Minister, or in private for members of his Congregation; or, in his absence, with the consent of the Churchwardens or Trustees of such Congregation; and *Provided, moreover*, that the license of the Ecclesiastical Authority required in Section 7 be first obtained when necessary.

Exception.

This rule shall not apply to any Church, Chapel, or Oratory, which is part of the premises of an incorporated institution, created by legislative authority, provided that such a place of worship is designed and set apart for the convenience and uses of such institution, and not as a place for public or parochial worship.

Neglecting to perform services of the Church.

(b). If any Minister of this Church, from disability or any other cause, neglect to perform the regular services in his Congregation, and refuse, without good cause, his consent to any other duly qualified Minister of

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 20.**

---

this Church to officiate within his Cure, the Churchwardens, Vestrymen, or Trustees of the Congregation shall, on proof before the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese of such neglect or refusal, have power, with the written consent of the said Authority, to permit any duly qualified Minister of this Church to officiate.

Sec. 6 (a). A Minister of this Church removing into a Diocese shall, in order to gain canonical residence within the same, present to the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof a testimonial from the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he last had canonical residence, which testimonial shall set forth his true standing and character. The said testimonial shall be given by the Ecclesiastical Authority to the applicant, and a duplicate thereof may be sent to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese to which he proposes to remove. The testimonial may be in the following words:

To present a testimonial to Ecclesiastical Authority.

**I hereby certify that the Reverend A. B., who has signified to me his desire to be transferred to the Ecclesiastical Authority of \_\_\_\_\_ is a Presbyter [or Deacon] of \_\_\_\_\_ in good standing, and has not, so far as I know or believe, been justly liable to evil report, for error in religion or for viciousness of life, for three years last past.**

**(Signed)**

(b). Such testimonial shall be called Letters Dimissory. The canonical residence of the Minister so transferred shall date from the acceptance of his Letters Dimissory, of which prompt notice shall be given both to the applicant and to the Ecclesiastical Authority from which it came.

Date when transfer shall take effect.

(c). Letters Dimissory not presented within six months from the date of their transmission to the applicant shall become wholly void.

When Letters Dimissory void.

(d). If a Minister, removing into another Diocese, has been called to a Cure in a Parish or Congregation therein, he shall present Letters Dimissory in the form above given. It shall be the duty of the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese to which he has removed, to accept them within three months unless the Bishop or Standing Committee shall have heard rumors, which he or they believe to be well founded, against the character of the Minister concerned, which would form a proper ground of canonical inquiry and presentment, in which case the Ecclesiastical Authority shall communicate the same to the Bishop or Standing Committee of the Diocese to whose jurisdiction the said Minister belongs; and in such case, it shall not be the duty of the Ecclesiastical Authority to accept the Letters Dimissory unless and until the Minister shall be exculpated from the said charge.

When Letters Dimissory need not be accepted.

(e). No Minister, removing from one Diocese to another, shall officiate as Rector or Minister of any Parish or Congregation of the Diocese to which he removes, until he shall have obtained from the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof a certificate in the words following:

Before removing into a Diocese, to obtain certificate.

**I hereby certify that the Reverend A. B. has been canonically transferred to my jurisdiction and is a Minister in good standing.**

**(Signed)**



**TITLE III**  
**CANON 20.**

---

No person refused ordination in any Diocese to be afterwards transferred thereto without consent of Bishop.

(f). No person who has been refused Ordination or reception as a Candidate in any Diocese, and who has afterwards been ordained in another Diocese, shall be transferred to the Diocese in which such refusal has taken place without the consent of its Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority.

Limitation of transfer.

(g). No person who has been ordained under the provisions of Canon III. 8 shall be transferred to another Diocese, save as provided in the said Canon.

License required to officiate.

Sec. 7. No Minister of this Church shall officiate more than two months by preaching, ministering the Sacraments, or holding any public service, within the limits of any Diocese other than that in which he is canonically resident, without a license from the Ecclesiastical Authority.

To obtain testimonial when desiring to officiate abroad.

Sec. 8 (a). Any Minister of this Church desiring to officiate temporarily without the confines of this Church shall, in order so to do, obtain from the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he has canonical residence, a testimonial which shall set forth his true standing and character, and may be in the following words:

Form of testimonial.

**I hereby certify that the Reverend A. B. who has signified to me his desire to be permitted to officiate temporarily in churches not under the jurisdiction of the Protestant Episcopal Church, yet in communion with this Church, is a Presbyter [or Deacon] of \_\_\_\_\_ in good standing, and as such is entitled to the rights and privileges of his Order.**

This testimonial is valid for one year from date of issuance and is to be returned to the Ecclesiastical Authority at the end of that period.

Record to be kept.

(b). The Ecclesiastical Authority giving such testimonial shall keep a record of issuance of such, in which the date of issuance and of return shall be recorded, together with the name of the Minister to whom the testimonial has been issued.

Chaplaincy duty.

Sec. 9 (a). Any Priest of this Church desiring to serve as a Chaplain in the Armed Forces of the United States of America or as Chaplain for the Veterans' Administration, with the approval of the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he is canonically resident, may be given ecclesiastical endorsement for such service by the Armed Forces Division of the Executive Council of the Church.

Canonical residence of Chaplains.

(b). Such Ministers serving on active duty with the Armed Forces shall retain canonical residence in a Diocese of this Church, and shall be under the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of the Bishop of said Diocese, even though his work as a Chaplain shall be under the general supervision of the Armed Forces Division, or such Bishop of the Church as the Presiding Bishop may designate.

Exceptions to canonical observances.

(c). Any such Minister serving on a military installation or at a Veterans' Administration facility shall not be subject to either Sec. 4 (a), nor Sec. 6, of this Canon. When serving outside of military installations or of Veterans' Administration facilities, such Chaplains shall be subject to said Sections.

To resign position at age seventy-two.

Sec. 10. Upon attaining the age of seventy-two years, every Minister of this Church occupying any remunerative position in this Church shall

### TITLE III

#### CANONS 20, 21.

---

resign the same and retire from active service, and his resignation shall be accepted. Thereafter, he may accept any position in this Church, except the position or positions from which he has resigned pursuant to this Section; *Provided*, that (a) the tenure in such position shall be for a period of not more than one year, which period may be renewed from time to time, and (b) service in such position shall have the express approval of the Bishop and Standing Committee of the Diocese in which such service is to be performed, acting in consultation with the Ecclesiastical Authority of such Minister's canonical residence.

Sec. 11. There shall accompany Letters Dimissory a statement of the record of the payments to The Church Pension Fund of the Minister concerned.

#### CANON 21.

##### Of the Dissolution of the Pastoral Relation

Sec. 1. Except as provided in Canon III. 20, Sec. 10, a Rector may not resign his Parish without the consent of the said Parish, or its Trustees, whichever may be authorized to act in the premises, nor may any Rector canonically or lawfully elected and in charge of any Parish be removed therefrom by said Parish, Vestry, or Trustees, against his will, except as hereinafter provided.

Rector not to resign without consent of Vestry, nor to be removed against his will.

Sec. 2. If for any urgent reason a Rector or Minister as aforesaid, or the body authorized to elect a Rector in the Parish committed to his charge, shall desire a separation and dissolution of the pastoral relation, and the parties be not agreed respecting a separation and dissolution, notice in writing may be given by either party to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese. The Bishop, in case the difference be not settled by his godly judgment, shall ask the advice and consent of the Standing Committee of the Diocese, and, proceeding with its aid and counsel, shall be the ultimate arbiter and judge. If the Diocese be vacant, the Ecclesiastical Authority shall select a Bishop of an adjacent Diocese to act as the Bishop, and with like force and effect. The judgment shall be either that the pastoral relation between the parties shall cease and determine at a time and upon terms therein specified, or that the said relation shall not be terminated; and such judgment shall be binding upon both parties. In the event of the failure or refusal of either party to comply with the terms of such judgment, the Bishop may inflict such penalties as may be provided by the Constitution and Canons of the Diocese; and in default of any provisions for such penalties therein, the Bishop may (1) in the case of a Rector or Minister, suspend such Rector or Minister from the exercise of his priestly office until he shall comply with said judgment; (2) in the case of a Vestry or Trustees, recommend to Diocesan Convention that the union of the Parish or Mission with Convention shall cease until they have complied with his judgment.

Mode of settling differences.

Sec. 3. In case of the regular and canonical dissolution of the connection between a Rector or Minister and his Parish, under this Canon, the Ecclesiastical Authority shall direct the Secretary of the Convention to record the same.

Dissolution of pastoral relation to be recorded.

Sec. 4. This Canon shall not apply in any Diocese which has made, or shall hereafter make, provision by Canon upon this subject, nor in

This Canon not to apply where other provision is made.

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 21, 22, 23.**

---

contravention of any right of any Rector, Minister, Parish, Congregation, or Vestry under the law of the Civil Authority.

**CANON 22.**

**Of the Filling of Vacant Cures**

Wardens to give notice to Bishop when Parish or Congregation becomes vacant.

Sec. 1. When a Parish or Congregation becomes vacant, the Churchwardens or other proper officers shall notify the fact to the Bishop. If the authorities of the Parish shall for thirty days have failed to make provision for the services, it shall be the duty of the Bishop to take such measures as he may deem expedient for the temporary maintenance of Divine services therein.

Bishop may communicate with Vestry.

Sec. 2. No election of a Rector shall be had until the name of the Clergyman whom it is proposed to elect has been made known to the Bishop, if there be one, and sufficient time, not exceeding thirty days, has been given to him to communicate with the Vestry thereon, nor until such communication, if made within that period, has been considered by the Parish or Vestry at a meeting duly called and held for that purpose.

Certificate to Ecclesiastical Authority.

Sec. 3. Written notice of the election, signed by the Churchwardens, shall be sent to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese. If the Ecclesiastical Authority be satisfied that the person so chosen is a duly qualified Minister, and that he has accepted the office, the notice shall be sent to the Secretary of the Convention, who shall record it. And such record shall be sufficient evidence of the relation between the Minister and the Parish.

Ministers settled when engaged for at least one year.

Sec. 4. A Minister is settled, for all purposes here or elsewhere mentioned in these Canons, who has been engaged permanently, or for any term not less than one year, by any Parish, according to the rules of the Diocese in which such Parish is located.

Election of Assistant Minister.

Sec. 5. In case of the election of an Assistant Minister the name of the Clergyman whom it is proposed to elect shall be made known to the Bishop and sufficient time, not exceeding thirty days, shall be given him to communicate with the Rector and Vestry thereon.

**CANON 23.**

**Of Deacons.**

Subject to Ecclesiastical Authority.

Sec. 1. Every Deacon shall be subject to the direction of the Bishop of the jurisdiction for which he has been ordained, or, if there be no Bishop, to that of the Clerical members of the Standing Committee, acting by their President, until he is canonically transferred to some other jurisdiction. He shall officiate in such places only as the Bishop, or the Clerical members of the Standing Committee, as the case may be, may designate. He shall not accept any appointment for work outside the jurisdiction to which he canonically belongs without the written consent both of his own Bishop and of the Bishop in whose jurisdiction he desires to minister.

Not to be Rector of a Parish or Chaplain in Armed Forces.

Sec. 2 (a). No Deacon shall be a Rector of a Parish or Congregation, nor be permitted to accept a Chaplaincy in the Armed Forces of the United States.

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 23, 24, 25.**

---

(b). A Deacon ministering in a Parish or Congregation under the charge of a Priest, shall act under the direction of such Priest in all his ministrations.

To act under direction of the Rector.

(c). A Deacon ministering in a Parish or Congregation not under the charge of a Priest, shall, if not under the immediate direction of the Bishop, be placed under the authority of some neighboring Priest, by whose direction, in subordination to the Bishop, he shall in all things be governed.

If there is no Rector, to act under direction of a Priest.

Sec. 3. No Deacon who shall not have passed the examinations prescribed in Canon III. 5, Sec. 1, shall be transferred to another jurisdiction without the written request of the Ecclesiastical Authority of the same.

Not to be transferred until examination be passed.

Sec. 4. In case of a Deacon desiring to be transferred from one jurisdiction to another, the Ecclesiastical Authority of the former jurisdiction must state in the Letters Dimissory the exact standing of the Deacon as regards examinations passed or dispensations received; also the dates of his birth, admission as a Candidate, and ordination.

Deacon transferring to another Diocese.

**CANON 24.**

**Of Persons Not Ministers in this Church Officiating in any Congregation Thereof**

No Minister in charge of any Congregation of this Church, or, in case of vacancy or absence, no Churchwardens, Vestrymen, or Trustees of the Congregation, shall permit any person to officiate therein, without sufficient evidence of his being duly licensed or ordained to minister in this Church; *Provided*, nothing herein shall be so construed as

No person to minister in this Church unless duly authorized.

(a). To forbid communicants of this Church to act as Lay Readers; or

(b). To prevent the Bishop of any Diocese from giving permission

i. To a Minister of this Church, to invite a Minister of another Church to assist in the Book of Common Prayer Offices of Holy Matrimony or of the Burial of the Dead, or to read Morning or Evening Prayer, in the manner specified in Canon III. 25, Sec. 4(1); or

ii. To a minister of any other Church, to preach the Gospel; or

iii. To godly persons who are not Ministers of this Church, to make addresses in the Church on special occasions.

**CANON 25.**

**Of Lay Readers**

Sec. 1. A competent person, ready and desirous to serve the Church in the conduct of public worship statedly as a Lay Reader, shall procure a written license from the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese of which he is a canonical resident. Where a Presbyter is in charge, his request and recommendation must have been previously signified to the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority. Permission shall not be granted a Lay Reader to conduct the service in a Congregation without an ordained Minister, which, in the judgment of the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority, is able and has had reasonable opportunity to secure one.

License required.

**TITLE III**  
**CANON 25.**

---

The foregoing shall not be construed as preventing Lay Persons not so licensed, when authorized by the Bishop, from assisting a Presbyter on special occasions in the conduct of public worship. A commissioned officer of the Church Army, by virtue of that commission, is considered as having the authority of a Lay Reader.

Qualifications and requirements.

Sec. 2. An applicant for the office of Lay Reader must be regular in participating in the worship of the Church and in receiving the Holy Communion. He must be active in the support of his Mission or Parish. He shall submit to the Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority a written application stating his age, his reason for seeking the office, evidence of his Baptism and Confirmation, and a statement from his immediate Pastor or, if he has none, from the Vestry of his Parish or Committee of the Mission in which he is canonically resident, declaring his fitness for the office.

A Lay Reader assigned pastoral or administrative responsibility in a Congregation without an ordained Minister, other than for a specified event, shall be trained and examined and found competent in the following subjects:

- (a) The Holy Scriptures, contents and background.
- (b) The Book of Common Prayer and Hymnal.
- (c) Church History.
- (d) The Church's Doctrine as set forth in the Creeds and Offices of Instruction.
- (e) The Conduct of Public Worship.
- (f) Use of the voice.
- (g) Parish Administration.
- (h) Appropriate Canons.
- (i) Pastoral Care.

The Bishop may designate a representative or person or board with authority to act in the initial approval of applicants for licensing, and in their training, examination, and certification, for licensing by the Bishop.

Time limit and renewal of license.

Sec. 3. The license of a Lay Reader shall be granted for a definite period, not to exceed one year, and may be renewed from time to time, at the discretion of the Bishop. Such renewal shall be determined on the basis of the Lay Reader's continuing interest and qualification, as evidenced in an annual written report made by him to the Bishop. Such report shall include comment and endorsement of the local ecclesiastical superior of the Lay Reader.

The license of a Lay Reader may be revoked by the Bishop at any time.

Conduct of services. Directions and restrictions.

Sec. 4. In all matters relating to the conduct of the service, to the Sermons or Homilies to be read, and to proper dress or attire, the Lay Reader shall conform to the directions of the Clergyman in charge of the Parish, Congregation, or Mission in which he is serving, and, in all cases, to the direction of the Bishop. He shall read only the following offices, or parts thereof, and shall observe the limitations specified:

- (1) Morning and Evening Prayer, omitting the Absolution, and making no substitution for it;
- (2) The Litany;

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 25, 26.**

---

- (3) The Penitential Office;
- (4) The Offices of Instruction;
- (5) In the Order for Holy Communion, The Epistle only;
- (6) The Burial Offices; substituting for the priestly blessing the concluding prayer at the end of the Shorter Form for Family Prayer at Evening; substituting for the priestly blessing at the grave the final prayer at the end of the Shorter Form for Family Prayer at Morning; and substituting for the priestly blessing at the Burial of a Child the concluding prayer at the end of the Shorter Form for Family Prayer at Evening.

He shall not deliver Sermons or addresses of his own composition, unless, after instruction and examination, he be specially licensed thereto by the Bishop.

Sec. 5. A Lay Reader may deliver the Cup at the Holy Communion; *Provided*, that he has been specially licensed thereto by the Bishop. Such special license shall be given only at the request, and upon the recommendation, of the Clergyman in charge of the Parish, Congregation, or Mission in which the Lay Reader is serving. The license to administer the Chalice shall be issued for a period of time not to exceed one year, and shall be revocable at any time by the Bishop, or by the Minister at whose request it was granted.

Administration of Chalice by Lay Readers under special license.

Sec. 6. A Lay Reader licensed in any Diocese may serve in a Congregation of another jurisdiction at the invitation of the Clergyman in charge and with the consent of the Bishop thereof.

Special cases.

A licensed Lay Reader may serve in a unit of the Armed Forces with the permission of the Presiding Bishop or his Episcopal representative. The Presiding Bishop or his Episcopal representative may grant a Lay Reader's license to a member of the Armed Forces for use therein, in accordance with the provisions of this Canon as they are applicable.

**CANON 26.**

**Of Women in the Diaconate**

Sec. 1. A woman of devout character and proved fitness may be ordered Deacon by any Bishop of the Church, subject to the provisions of this Canon.

Women may be ordained to Diaconate.

Sec. 2. She shall fulfill all that is required of Candidates for Holy Orders in these Canons.

Requirements.

Sec. 3. She shall comply with the provisions of the Canon, "Of General Provisions for Candidates".

Sec. 4. She shall fulfill the requirements of the Canon, "Of the Normal Standard of Learning and Examination of Candidates for Holy Orders", except for those provisions relating to the Priesthood.

Sec. 5. She shall be subject to the requirements of the Canon, "Of Ordination to the Diaconate", and of the Canon, "On the Diaconate", except where such provisions relate to the Priesthood.

Sec. 6. She shall conform to the provisions of Article VIII. of the Constitution.

# TITLE III

## CANONS 26, 27.

---

Pension provisions.

Sec. 7. Women ordained to the Diaconate prior to January 1, 1971, shall continue to have the benefit of their present provisions for pension protection at the expense of their employers, through the Pension Plan for Deaconesses provided by the Church Insurance Corporation, or through some other pension plan providing equivalent or better guarantees of a dependable retirement income, approved by proper authority. Women ordained subsequent to January 1, 1971, shall be entitled to the same provisions for pension protection as other Deacons.

### CANON 27.

#### Of Religious Communities

Rule and Constitution to be approved by Bishop.

Sec. 1. A religious community of men or women desiring the official recognition of the Church shall submit for his approval its Rule and Constitution to the Bishop of the Diocese wherein the Mother-house of the community is situated; and no change in the Rule or Constitution shall be made without his approval.

Sec. 2. In such Constitution there shall be a distinct recognition of the Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship of this Church as of supreme authority.

Sec. 3. No religious community shall establish itself in another Diocese without permission of the Bishop of that Diocese.

Chaplain.

Sec. 4. The community may elect a Chaplain, but if he be a Priest who is not canonically resident in the Diocese, he must be licensed by the Bishop. Any Priest ministering in a Chapel of a religious community shall be responsible to the Bishop of the Diocese for his ministrations, in the same manner as a parochial Clergyman.

Book of Common Prayer to be used.

Sec. 5. In the administration of the Sacraments the Book of Common Prayer shall be used without alteration, save as it may be lawfully permitted by lawful authority.

Property to be held in trust.

Sec. 6. It shall be provided in the Constitution of a religious community that real estate and endowments belonging to the community shall be held in trust for the community as a body in communion with this Church.

Sec. 7. Members of a religious community who are in Holy Orders shall be subject to all canonical regulations concerning the Clergy.

Visitor.

Sec. 8. Provision shall be made in the Constitution for the appointment of a Visitor, with the approval of the Bishop of the Diocese in which the Mother-house is situated, if the Bishop is himself unwilling to serve in such capacity. It shall be the duty of the Visitor to see that the Constitution and Rule, as approved, are duly observed, and to receive and hear appeals either from the community or from individual members thereof as to transgressions of the Rule. No full member of a community shall be dismissed therefrom without appeal to the Visitor, nor shall any be released from his or her obligations thereto without the Visitor's sanction.

Official recognition not to be withdrawn.

Sec. 9. It shall not be within the power of a succeeding Bishop to withdraw the official recognition that has been given to a Religious Community; *Provided*, that the conditions laid down in this Canon are observed.

**TITLE III**  
**CANONS 28, 29.**

---

**CANON 28.**

**Of Professional Church Workers**

Sec. 1. Any person, being a communicant of this Church, who is a salaried, professional, Church worker, who is employed or seeks to be employed, as a Christian Education, College, or Social, Worker, in the service of this Church in any Diocese, and who fulfills, in the opinion of the Bishop, the following qualifications:

How certified.

- (a). Completion of two years of graduate study in a Church Training School or Seminary; or
- (b). Completion of a five-year combination of at least two of the following:
  - (1). Attendance at college;
  - (2). Attendance at a Church Training School or Seminary;
  - (3). Employment in the field of Christian Education; *Provided*, that at least 16 Semester hours have been earned in two or more of the following fields:
    - Religion,
    - Christian Education, or
    - Education,

may apply to the Bishop of that jurisdiction to be accepted as a Certified Worker.

Sec. 2. The Bishop shall keep a list of such Certified Workers. When such a Certified Worker moves to another jurisdiction, the Ecclesiastical Authority shall give the said worker a letter to the Bishop of the jurisdiction to which such Worker shall remove, certifying that the said Worker has been on the list of Certified Workers.

Bishop to keep list.

Removing to other jurisdiction.

Sec. 3. All such Certified Workers shall report, either personally or by letter, to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the jurisdiction in which each such Worker is employed, annually, during Advent, as to the progress of their work. They shall also report at other times, if requested to do so by the Ecclesiastical Authority.

To report annually.

**CANON 29.**

**Of Lay Ministries**

The Church in each Diocese shall make provision for the development, training, and utilization of lay ministries within this Church. Each Diocese may establish such structures as it shall deem fitting for the implementation of this Canon.





**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 1.**

---

**TITLE IV.**  
**ECCLESIASTICAL DISCIPLINE**

---

**CANON 1.**

**Of Offenses for which Bishops, Presbyters, or Deacons May Be Tried**

Sec. 1. A Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon of this Church shall be liable to presentment and trial for the following offenses, viz.:

List of offenses.

- (1). Crime or immorality.
- (2). Holding and teaching publicly or privately and advisedly, any doctrine contrary to that held by this Church.
- (3). Violation of the Rubrics of the Book of Common Prayer.
- (4). Violation of the Constitution or Canons of the General Convention.
- (5). Violation of the Constitution or Canons of the Diocese to which he belongs.
- (6). Any act which involves a violation of his Ordination vows.
- (7). Habitual neglect of the exercise of his Ministerial Office, without cause; or habitual neglect of Public Worship, and of the Holy Communion, according to the order and use of this Church.
- (8). Conduct unbecoming a Clergyman; *Provided, however,* that in the case of a Presbyter or Deacon charged with this offense, before proceeding to a presentment, the consent of three-fourths of all the members of the Standing Committee of the Diocese in which the Presbyter or Deacon is canonically resident shall be required.

Consent required for presentment.

Upon a Presbyter or Deacon's being found guilty, such Presbyter or Deacon shall be admonished, or shall be suspended or deposed from the Sacred Ministry, as shall be adjudged by the Trial Court, except as provided in Canon IV. 12, Sec. 3.

Sec. 2. In the case of a Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon convicted in a Court of Record of any crime or misdemeanor involving immorality, or against whom a judgment has been entered in a Court of Record in a cause involving immorality, it shall be the duty of the Presiding Bishop, in the case of a Bishop, and in the case of a Presbyter or Deacon, of the Standing Committee of the Diocese in which he is canonically resident, to institute an inquiry into the matter. If in the judgment of either there is sufficient reason for further proceedings, it shall be their duty to present him, or to cause that he be presented, for trial.

Case of a Minister convicted of immorality in a Civil Court.

Sec. 3. No presentment shall be made or conviction had for any offense, unless the offense shall have been committed within five years immediately preceding the time of presentment, except that in a case of a conviction in a Court of Record exercising criminal jurisdiction as aforesaid, a presentment may be made at any time within one year after such conviction notwithstanding five years may have elapsed since the commission of the offense.

Time within which presentment must be made.

Sec. 4. If presentment shall have been made against a Presbyter or Deacon, or in the case of a Presbyter or Deacon convicted of any crime or misdemeanor involving immorality, or against whom a judgment has been entered in a Court of Record in a cause involving immorality, or in the case of the abandonment of the communion of

Minister under presentment to be inhibited.

# TITLE IV

## CANONS 1, 2, 3.

---

this Church by a Presbyter or Deacon, the Bishop in whose jurisdiction the Presbyter or Deacon is canonically resident may, upon probable cause, inhibit the Presbyter or Deacon from officiating in said jurisdiction until after the judgment of the Trial Court becomes final, or Sentence have been pronounced under Canon IV. 8.

### CANON 2.

#### Of Amenability, Citation, and Attendance

Every Minister amenable to the Ecclesiastical Authority.

Sec. 1. Bishops, Presbyters, and Deacons are amenable for offenses committed by them; a Bishop to a Court of Bishops, and a Presbyter or Deacon to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the jurisdiction in which he is canonically resident at the time the charge is made.

Mode of citation for trial.

Sec. 2. A notice or citation required by any law of this Church to any Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon to appear, at a certain time and place for the trial of an offense, shall be deemed to be duly served upon him if a copy thereof be given him personally or be left at his usual place of abode within the United States, sixty days before the day of appearance named therein; and in case such Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon has departed from the United States, if a copy of such citation be also published once a week for six successive weeks in such newspaper printed in the jurisdiction in which the Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon is cited to appear as the Ecclesiastical Authority shall designate, the last publication to be six months before the said day of appearance. Acceptance of service will render unnecessary any further process of citation.

Mode of serving other citations.

Sec. 3. A notice or citation, other than those above mentioned, required by any law of this Church, when no other mode of service is provided, may be served personally, or by registered mail, addressed to the person to be served, at his last known place of residence, or by leaving a copy at his last usual place of abode within the United States.

Duty to give evidence.

Sec. 4. It is hereby declared to be the duty of all members of this Church to attend and give evidence, when duly cited in any Ecclesiastical trial or investigation under the authority of this Church.

### CANON 3.

#### Of Courts, Their Membership and Procedure

##### (a) Diocesan Courts for the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon

Ecclesiastical Court necessary.

Sec. 1. In each Diocese there shall be an Ecclesiastical Court for the trial of any Presbyter or Deacon thereof, and it shall be the duty of each Diocese to provide by Canon for the establishment of such Court and the mode of conducting trials in the same.

##### (b) Courts of Review of the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon

Stay of proceedings in Trial Court.

Sec. 2. In case of conviction by the Trial Court, the Bishop shall not proceed to sentence the accused before the expiration of thirty days after he shall have been served with notice of the decision of the Court in the manner specified in Canon IV. 2, Sec. 3, nor in case an appeal is taken shall sentence be pronounced pending the hearing and determination thereof.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

Sec. 3. In each of the Provinces there shall be a Court of Review of the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon, which shall be composed of a Bishop therein, three Presbyters canonically resident in one or other of the Dioceses within the Province, and three Lay communicants of the Church having domicile in the Province; two at least of said Lay communicants to be men learned in the law.

Constitution of Court.

Sec. 4. Each Provincial Synod shall triennially at its first meeting after the regular meeting of the General Convention elect the Judges of the Court of Review in the Province. The Synod shall prescribe the manner in which said Judges shall be elected. The persons so elected, except in case of death, resignation, refusal, or inability to serve, shall continue to be members of the Court for the term of three years and until their successors shall be elected.

Mode of choosing Judges.

The Bishop elected by the Synod shall be the Presiding Officer of the Court.

Presiding Officer.

Sec. 5. The several Courts of Review are vested with jurisdiction to hear and determine appeals from decisions of Trial Courts in Dioceses on the trial of a Presbyter or Deacon.

Jurisdiction of Court.

Sec. 6. An appeal to the Court of Review of the Province within which a trial was had may be taken by the accused from a decision of the Trial Court which sustains in whole or in part a charge of any canonical offense. Upon the written request of at least two Bishops of other jurisdictions within the Province, the Bishop or the Standing Committee of the Diocese within which a trial was had shall appeal from a decision of the Trial Court acquitting the accused of a charge involving a question of Doctrine, Faith, or Worship; *Provided, however,* that such appeal shall be on the question of the Church's Doctrine, Faith, or Worship only, and that the decision shall not be held to reverse the acquittal of the accused on other charges than these. But such an appeal by the Standing Committee can be taken only when there is a vacancy in the office of Bishop or in case the Bishop is unable to act. The Bishop of the jurisdiction within which a trial was held, or (in case of his inability to act) the Standing Committee, shall cause to be served on the accused against whom an adverse decision has been made by the Trial Court, written notice thereof. Within thirty days after the service of such notice the accused may appeal to the Court of Review by serving a written notice of appeal on the Bishop or Standing Committee of said jurisdiction and a duplicate on the President of the Court. Such notice shall be subscribed by the appellant and shall briefly set forth the decision from which the appeal is taken and the grounds of the appeal. An appeal by the Bishop or Standing Committee may be taken by the service by the appellant of a written notice of appeal upon the accused, and also upon the President of the Court, within thirty days after the decision from which the appeal is taken.

Right of appeal.

Of appeal in questions of doctrine, etc.

Proviso.

Notice of appeal.

If the trial was had in a Diocese not specified in Canon I. 8, Section 1, the appeal shall lie to the Court of the Province which is geographically closest to such Diocese.

Appeal if Diocese is non-provincial.

Sec. 7. An appeal shall be heard upon the record of the Trial Court. When an appeal shall have been taken, the Bishop, or in case of his

What may come before the Court.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

---

Transcript of record to be sent to President of Court of Review.

inability to act, the Standing Committee of the Diocese wherein the trial was had, within thirty days after receiving notice of the appeal, shall transmit to the President of the Court of Review of the Province, a full and correct transcript of the record, proceedings, and decision of the Trial Court, including all the evidence taken upon the trial, duly certified by the Presiding Officer or Clerk of such Court. Except for the purpose of correcting the record, if defective, no new evidence shall be taken by the Court of Review.

Appointment of time and place for hearing appeal.

Sec. 8. The President of the Court of Review of the Province having jurisdiction, within ninety days after the record shall have been received by him, shall appoint a time and place within such Province for the hearing of the appeal. At least thirty days prior to the day appointed, written notice of such time and place shall be given by him to the other members of the Court, and also to the accused, and to the Bishop and Standing Committee of the Diocese in which the trial was had. When the appeal is from the decision of a Trial Court in any Missionary Diocese such notice shall be served at least three months prior to the day appointed for the hearing and the appellant shall have four months after the appeal is taken within which to serve and deliver copies of the record.

Notice to Court and to parties.

Appellant to have record of Trial Court printed.

Sec. 9. It shall be the duty of the appellant to procure a certified copy of the record of the trial, including the charges, evidence, decision, or judgment, together with the notice of appeal, to be printed. Within sixty days after the appeal shall have been taken he shall serve two printed copies of the record and notice of appeal upon the opposite party, and shall deliver seven printed copies to the President of the Court for the use of the Judges. For reasons by him deemed sufficient, the President may dispense with the printing of the record, or of any portion thereof.

Church Advocate.

The Church Advocate shall be deemed to be the opposite party for the purpose of this and the succeeding Canons.

Organization of Court.

Sec. 10. At the time and place appointed, the Court shall organize, and proceed to hear the appeal; *Provided, however,* that at least six Judges, of whom the President of the Court shall be one, shall participate in the hearing. But the members present, if less than that number, may adjourn the Court from time to time, until the attendance of the requisite number shall be secured.

Quorum.

Power of Court to dispose of case.

Sec. 11. The Court may reverse or affirm, in whole or in part, the decision of the Trial Court, or, if in its opinion justice shall so require, it may grant a new trial. If after having been duly notified, the appellant fail to appear, and no sufficient excuse be shown, the Court, in its discretion, may dismiss the appeal for want of prosecution, or may proceed to hear and determine the appeal in his absence.

Concurrence of two-thirds of Court necessary to pronounce judgment.

Sec. 12. The concurrence of two-thirds of the members of a Court present shall be necessary to pronounce a judgment. The judgment or decision of the Court shall be in writing, signed by the members of the Court uniting therein, and shall distinctly specify the grounds of the decision and shall be attached to the record. If the concurrence of two-thirds of the members cannot be obtained as provided, that fact shall be stated in the record, and the decision of the Trial Court shall

Non-concurrence of Court affirms decision of Trial Court.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

---

stand as affirmed. Immediately after the determination of the appeal the President of the Court shall give notice thereof in writing to the accused and to the Bishop and the Standing Committee of the Diocese in which the trial was had. Upon the determination of the appeal, the original record upon which the appeal was heard, together with the record of the Court of Review, certified by the President and the Secretary or Clerk, shall be remitted to the Bishop or the Standing Committee of the jurisdiction in which the trial was had. All records remitted as herein provided shall be deposited and be preserved among the Archives of the jurisdiction to which they are sent.

Records to be remitted to Ecclesiastical Authority of trial jurisdiction.

Sec. 13. The Court of Review for the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon shall not pronounce sentence on the affirmation of a conviction. When the appeal is so determined, upon receipt of the record by the Bishop or Standing Committee of the jurisdiction of the Trial Court, the accused shall be sentenced in accordance with Canon IV. 12, the provisions of which shall be complied with.

Sentence.

**(c) Court for the Trial of a Bishop**

Sec. 14 (a). There shall be a Court for the Trial of a Bishop constituted as follows: The House of Bishops shall choose three Bishops to serve as Judges of said court for a term of three years, three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for a term of six years, and three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for a term of nine years, and thereafter at each General Convention the House of Bishops shall choose three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for the term of nine years, in place of those whose term of office shall then have expired.

Mode of selecting Judges.

(b). The Court is vested with jurisdiction to try a Bishop who is duly charged with any one or more of the offenses specified in Canon IV. 1.

Jurisdiction.

(c). Not less than six of said Judges shall constitute a quorum, but any less number may adjourn the Court from time to time.

Quorum.

**(d) The Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop**

Sec. 15. There shall be a Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, which shall be composed of Bishops only and shall be constituted as follows:

Court of Bishops only.

The House of Bishops shall choose three Bishops who shall serve as Judges of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop for the term of three years, three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for the term of six years, and three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for the term of nine years, and thereafter at each General Convention the House of Bishops shall choose three Bishops to serve as aforesaid for the term of nine years in place of those whose term of office shall then have expired.

Mode of selecting Judges.

Sec. 16. The said Court of Review is vested with jurisdiction to hear and determine appeals from the determination of the Court for the Trial of a Bishop.

Jurisdiction of Court.

Sec. 17. Not less than six Judges shall constitute a quorum and the concurrence of six Judges shall be necessary to pronounce a judgment, but any less number may adjourn the Court from time to time.

Quorum.

**(e) Of Membership in Courts**

Sec. 18 (a). No person shall sit as a member of any Court who is a presenter of charges or is related to the accused or either of them by

Relationships which disqualify a Judge.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

---

affinity or consanguinity in a direct-ascending or descending line, or as a brother, uncle, nephew, or first cousin, nor shall any Bishop, nor any Presbyter, nor any Layman of the Diocese in which the trial was had be competent to sit on an appeal from the decision on such trial, nor shall any Bishop, Presbyter, or Layman who for any reason upon objection made by either party is deemed by the other members of the Court to be disqualified.

...if vacancies,  
how created.

(b). The death, permanent disability, resignation, or refusal to serve as a member of any Court or Board of Inquiry shall constitute a vacancy in the Court or Board of Inquiry.

Notices of resignations or refusals to serve shall be given as follows:

(1). By any Bishop chosen to serve as a member of the Court for the Trial of a Bishop or of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop; written notice sent to the Presiding Bishop.

(2). By the President of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon; written notice sent to the President of the Provincial Synod.

(3). By a Presbyter or Layman of such Court; written notice sent to the President of said Court.

(4). By a Presbyter or Layman appointed to a Board of Inquiry; written notice sent to the Presiding Bishop.

Disqualification  
of member of  
Board.

(c). If any Presbyter appointed to a Board of Inquiry or to any of the Courts shall become a Bishop, or any Layman appointed to a Board of Inquiry or to any of the Courts shall become a Presbyter before the final disposition of the charge, he shall thereby vacate his place as a member of the Board or Court.

Vacancies, how  
filled.

Sec. 19. Vacancies occurring in any of the Courts or Boards may be filled as follows:

(1). In the case of disqualification of any Judge of any Court, the remaining Judges of the said Court shall appoint a Judge to take the place of the one so disqualified in that particular case.

(2). In the case of a vacancy in the Court for the Trial of a Bishop or in the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop the remaining Judges thereafter shall have power to fill such vacancy until the next General Convention when the House of Bishops shall choose a Bishop to fill such vacancy. The Bishop so chosen shall serve during the remainder of the term.

(3). In the case of death, permanent disability, resignation, or refusal to serve, or the removal from the Province of the Bishop appointed as a member of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon, the President of the Provincial Synod shall give written notice thereof to the Bishop with jurisdiction senior by consecration in the Province. Thereupon the Bishop so notified shall become a member of the Court until a new appointment shall be made. If in a particular case the Bishop so appointed is unable or unwilling to serve as a member of the Court he shall notify the President of the Provincial Synod of this fact, who shall thereupon appoint the Bishop with jurisdiction next senior by consecration in that Province.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

---

(4). In case a vacancy shall exist in the membership of the Court of Review in any Province, among the clerical or lay members originally chosen, or in case any of them shall be disqualified or unable to sit in a particular case, the President of the Court shall appoint other Presbyters or Laymen residing in the Province to fill such vacancy and to sit as members of said Court.

(5). In the case of a vacancy for any cause in the Board of Inquiry the Presiding Bishop shall appoint another Presbyter or another Layman, as the case may be, to act as a member of the Board, who, upon acceptance of appointment, shall become a member of the Board.

All of the provisions of the Canons relating to persons originally appointed as members of the several Courts or Boards of Inquiry or Commissions shall apply to those persons appointed in succession to the persons originally appointed, and all proceedings which may have been taken on any cause pending at or prior to such appointment shall have the same force and effect as if the appointee had been a member of the Court, Board, or Commission, when such cause was commenced, and such appointee may participate in the continuing hearing and determination of the said cause.

If the term for which a member of a Court, Board, or Commission was chosen shall have expired during the course of a hearing or trial, said member shall notwithstanding be competent to act in the cause until the termination of the trial or hearing.

**(f) Of Procedure**

Sec. 20 (a). The procedure in Diocesan Courts shall be as provided by the Canons of the respective Dioceses.

Diocesan Courts.

(b). The Court for the Trial of a Bishop and the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop shall from time to time elect from its own membership a Presiding Judge who shall hold office until the expiration of the term for which he was chosen Judge. If in any proceeding before said Courts the Presiding Judge is disqualified or is for any cause unable to act, the Court shall elect a Bishop as Presiding Judge *pro tempore*.

Presiding Judge.

(c). The several Courts shall appoint Clerks and if necessary Assistant Clerks, who shall be Presbyters of this Church, to serve during the pleasure of the Court.

Who shall be Clerks.

The several Courts may appoint not less than two nor more than three lay communicants of this Church, learned in the law, as Assessors. They shall have no vote. It shall be their duty to give the Court an opinion on any question, not theological, upon which the Court or any member thereof, or either party, shall desire an opinion. If a question shall arise as to whether any question is theological, it shall be decided by the Court by a majority of the votes.

Lay Assessors.

The several Courts may adopt rules of procedure not inconsistent with the Constitution and Canons of this Church, with power to alter or rescind the same from time to time.

Rules of Procedure.

Sec. 21. In the conduct of investigations preliminary to presentments, as well as in all trials, the laws of the civil jurisdiction in which such investigation or trial is had, so far as they relate to evidence, shall be

Board of Inquiry.



**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 3.**

---

adopted and taken as the rules by which said Board of Inquiry, Commission, or Court, shall be governed, and trials shall be conducted according to the principles of the common law as the same is generally administered in the United States, except in those Dioceses where Ecclesiastical Courts are provided for by Constitution or Statute, in which case the same shall govern.

No determination or judgment of any Court shall be disturbed for technical errors not going to the merits of the cause.

The several Courts shall keep a record of all their proceedings.

Sec. 22. The various Courts shall permit the accused to be heard in person or by counsel of his own selection, provided every such counsel shall be a communicant of this Church, but in every trial or investigation the several Courts may regulate the number of counsel who may address the Court or examine witnesses.

The President, or any other member of the several Courts, shall upon application of either the Church Advocate or the accused issue subpoenas for witnesses, but before doing so the person who issues the same shall first be satisfied that the testimony sought to be adduced is material and that the witness is one whom the Court would be willing to hear upon the trial, otherwise he may refuse to issue the same.

When the several Courts are not in session, if there is a vacancy in the office of the President, the Bishop who is senior by consecration shall perform the duties of the office of President.

If in the course of a trial it becomes necessary to take the testimony of absent witnesses, it may be taken upon a Commission as such commissions are authorized by the common law in the jurisdiction in which the trial takes place, and in case there is ground to suppose that the attendance of a witness at the forthcoming trial cannot be obtained, it shall be lawful for either party to apply to the Court if in session, or, if not, to any member thereof, who shall thereupon appoint a Commissioner to take the deposition of such witness; and such party desiring to take such depositions shall give the opposite party reasonable notice of the time and place of taking depositions, accompanying such notice with the interrogatories to be propounded to the witness, whereupon it shall be lawful for the other party within six days after such notice to propound cross-interrogatories and such interrogatories and cross-interrogatories, if any be propounded, shall be sent to the Commissioner, who shall thereupon proceed to take the testimony of such witness and transmit it under seal to the Court. Such testimony shall be preceded by a written declaration of the witness similar to that of a witness testifying in person before the Court for the Trial of a Bishop.

In any Diocese in which the Civil Government shall have authorized the Ecclesiastical Courts therein to issue subpoenas for witnesses or to administer an oath, the Court shall act in conformity to such law.

*Provided, however,* that no deposition shall be taken, or read at the trial, unless the Court shall deem such testimony to be material and also have reasonable assurance that the attendance of the witness cannot be procured, and the several Courts shall have power to limit the scope of the testimony and the number of witnesses to be examined and whose depositions shall be taken.

Record of Proceedings.

Accused to be heard.

Power to summon witnesses.

President.

Mode of taking deposition.

Commissioner.

Cross-examination.

Proviso.

On what condition deposition may be read.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANONS 3, 4.**

Sec. 23. Where a presentment of a Bishop is made by any ten Bishops of this Church exercising jurisdiction, they may select a Church Advocate as legal adviser. The Presiding Bishop upon the receipt of written charges or written demand under the provisions of Sections 3 or 4 of Canon IV. 4, shall at the same time that the Board of Inquiry is appointed as provided in Section 5 of said Canon IV. 4, appoint a Church Advocate to act as the legal adviser of the Board.

Bishops making presentment select Church Advocate.

Legal Adviser.

Church Advocate.

In all trials and upon all appeals the several Courts may appoint a Church Advocate with or without assistants, all of whom shall be of the profession of the law, and communicants of the Church, to appear in behalf of the Church upon such trial or appeal. The Church Advocate shall then be considered the party on one side, and the accused the party on the other.

Sec. 24. The necessary charges and expenses of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Presbyter or Deacon, including the necessary expenses of the Church Advocate and Lay Assessors, shall be a charge upon the Province and shall be paid by the Treasurer of the Synod of such Province upon the order of the President of the Synod. Similar charges in the case of the Trial of a Bishop, and of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, shall be paid by the Treasurer of the General Convention upon the order of the President of such Courts.

Expenses of Court of Review.

The necessary expenses of Boards of Inquiry or Commissions appointed under the Canons of this Church to make preliminary investigation and to report upon charges presented, including therein the necessary expenses of Church Advocates appointed to assist such Boards or Commissions, shall be a charge upon the General Convention, or upon the Province, or the Diocese, as the case may be. They shall be paid by the respective Treasurers of the General Convention, of the Synod or Province, or of the Diocese, upon the order of the President of the several Courts.

Expenses of Boards of Inquiry.

**CANON 4.**

**Of Presentments**

**(a) Of a Presbyter or Deacon**

Sec. 1. The mode of presentment of a Presbyter or Deacon shall be that provided by the Canons of the Diocese wherein the accused is canonically resident.

Mode of presentment.

**(b) Of a Bishop**

Sec. 2. A presentment of any Bishop under Canon IV. 1, Section 1, for holding and teaching publicly or privately and advisedly, any doctrine contrary to that held by this Church, shall be had only upon the presentment of any ten Bishops exercising jurisdiction in this Church. Every such presentment shall be filed with the Presiding Bishop, together with a brief in support thereof. The Presiding Bishop shall thereupon serve a copy upon the person charged, together with a copy of the supporting brief. He shall fix a date for the filing of an answer, and brief in support thereof, at least three months from the date of service, and may, at his discretion and for good cause, extend the time for answering. Upon the filing of an answer and supporting brief, if any, or upon the expiration of the time fixed for an answer, if none be

May be presented for erroneous doctrine by any ten Bishops.

Supporting brief to be filed.

Answer and supporting brief.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 4.**

---

Consent of two-thirds of qualified voters in House of Bishops required before proceeding to trial.

Who may charge Bishops with offences.

Charges to be in writing.

A Bishop may demand investigation.

The Presiding Bishop shall summon Board of Inquiry.

Duties of Board of Inquiry.

Testimony to be preserved.

Presentment.

filed, the Presiding Bishop shall forthwith transmit copies of the presentment, answer, and briefs to each member of the House of Bishops. The written consent of two-thirds of the Bishops qualified to vote in the House of Bishops shall be required before the proceeding may continue as provided by Canon. In case a two-thirds majority of all the Bishops entitled to act in the premises shall not consent within the period of three months from the date of notification to them by the Presiding Bishop of the proceeding, the Presiding Bishop shall declare the presentment dismissed.

Sec. 3. A bishop may be charged with any one or more of the offenses specified in Canon IV. 1, other than that of holding and teaching doctrine contrary to that held by this Church, by three Bishops or ten or more male communicants of this Church in good standing, of whom at least two shall be Presbyters; one Presbyter and not less than six communications shall belong to the Diocese of the accused, or, in case the accused have no jurisdiction, to the Diocese in which he has domicile. Such charges shall be in writing, signed by all the accusers, sworn to by two or more of them, and shall be presented to the Presiding Bishop of the Church. The grounds of accusation must be set forth with reasonable certainty of time, place, and circumstance.

Sec. 4. Whenever a Bishop shall have reason to believe that there are in circulation rumors, reports, or allegations affecting his personal or official character, he may, acting in conformity with the written advice and consent of any two Bishops of this Church, demand in writing of the Presiding Bishop that investigation of said rumors, reports, and allegations be made.

Sec. 5. The Presiding Bishop, upon the receipt of such written charges or such written demand, shall summon not less than three nor more than seven Bishops, and, unless a majority of them shall determine that such charges, if proved, would constitute no canonical offense, they shall select a Board of Inquiry of five Presbyters and five Laymen, none of whom shall belong to the Diocese of the accused, of whom eight shall form a quorum.

The Board of Inquiry shall investigate such charges, or the said rumors or reports, as the case may be. In conducting the investigation, the Board shall hear the accusations and such proof as the accusers may produce, and shall determine whether, upon matters of law and of fact, as presented to them, there is sufficient ground to put the accused Bishop on his trial.

The testimony shall be stenographically reported, and shall be preserved in the custody of the Presiding Bishop or in the archives of the House of Bishops. The proceedings of the Board of Inquiry shall be private.

Sec. 6. If in the judgment of the majority of the whole Board of Inquiry, there is sufficient ground to put the said Bishop upon trial, they shall cause the Church Advocate to prepare a presentment, which shall be signed by such of the Board as shall agree thereto, and which shall be transmitted with the certificate of the determination of the Board to the Presiding Bishop.

## TITLE IV

### CANONS 4, 5.

---

If a majority of the whole Board shall determine that there is not sufficient ground to present the accused Bishop for trial, it shall forward the charges and a certificate of the finding thereon to the Presiding Bishop. He shall send the same to the Secretary of the House of Bishops, by him to be deposited in the archives of the House; and a true copy of these papers shall be given to the accused Bishop. No further proceeding shall be had by way of presentment on such charges, except that any communicant of this Church in good standing may make and present to the Presiding Bishop his affidavit alleging the discovery of new evidence as to the facts charged and setting forth what such evidence is; and upon the receipt thereof the Presiding Bishop shall decide whether the affidavit does or does not state grounds which in his opinion are sufficient for reopening the case. If the Presiding Bishop shall be of opinion that the affidavit states grounds sufficient to justify reopening the case, he shall reconvene the Board, which shall determine, first, whether as a matter of fact the evidence set forth in such affidavit is really new evidence and not merely cumulative; and if the Board shall find that the evidence so tendered is new, it shall proceed to receive and to consider such evidence, and any further evidence that it may deem proper to receive; and in the light of all the evidence the Board shall determine whether there are sufficient grounds for presentment. If the Board, by a majority of its members, shall decide that there is any such sufficient ground, it shall certify its decision as in this Canon heretofore provided.

If no ground for trial.

New evidence.

Sec. 7. In case a majority of the whole Board shall fail to find either that there is, or that there is not, sufficient ground to present the accused Bishop for trial, it shall certify the fact of its inability to agree upon any such finding to the Presiding Bishop, who, at the request of the accused Bishop, may select a new Board in the manner provided in Section 5, who shall consider the case *de novo*.

In case Board disagrees.

Sec. 8. In case any presentment shall be made to the Presiding Bishop as hereinbefore provided, he shall at once transmit the same to the President of the Court for the Trial of a Bishop, and shall cause a true copy of the presentment to be served upon the accused Bishop, in the manner provided in Canon IV.2.

Copy of presentment to be served.

Sec. 9. In case the Presiding Bishop shall be either an accuser or the accused, or shall otherwise be disabled, his duties under this Canon shall be performed by the Bishop who, according to the rules of the House of Bishops, becomes its Presiding Officer in case of the disability of the Presiding Bishop of the Church.

In case of disability of Presiding Bishop.

#### CANON 5.

##### Of the Trial of a Bishop

Sec. 1 (a). When the President of the Court for the Trial of a Bishop shall receive a presentment, he shall call the Court to meet at a certain time and place, said time not to be less than two nor more than six calendar months from the day of mailing such notice, and at a place within the Diocese of the accused Bishop, unless the same be of such difficult access, in the judgment of the President of the Court, that reasonable convenience requires the appointment of another place; and

Notice to Court.

Appointment of time and place.

## TITLE IV

### CANON 5.

---

	<p>in case the accused have no jurisdiction, at a place within the Diocese in which he has his domicile. With said notice, he shall send to each member of the Court a copy of the presentment.</p>
Summons of accused.	<p>(b). He shall also summon the accused to appear at the same time and place to answer the said presentment, and shall also give notice of the said time and place to the Church Advocate.</p>
Reading the presentment.	<p>Sec. 2 (a). At the time and place appointed, a quorum of the Court being present, the President shall declare the Court open for hearing the case; and when thus open, he shall direct the Clerk to call the names of the Church Advocate and the accused; and if both appear, he shall then cause the Clerk to read the presentment.</p>
The call to plead.	<p>(b). The accused shall then be called upon by the Court to plead to the presentment and his pleas shall be duly recorded; and on his neglect or refusal to plead, the plea of not guilty shall be entered for him, and the trial shall proceed; <i>Provided</i>, that for sufficient cause the Court may adjourn from time to time; and <i>Provided, also</i>, that the accused shall, at all times during the trial, have liberty to be present, and in due time and order to produce his testimony and to make his defense.</p>
Power to adjourn.	
Right of accused.	
Non-appearance.	<p>(c). If the accused fail or refuse to appear in person, according to the notice served on him as aforesaid, except for reasonable cause to be allowed by the Court, it shall pronounce him in contumacy, and give him notice that sentence of suspension or deposition will be pronounced against him by the Court at the expiration of three months unless at that time he shall appear and take his trial upon the presentment. If he do not so tender himself for trial, sentence of suspension, or of deposition from the Ministry, may be pronounced upon him by the Court.</p>
Contumacy.	
Three months' grace to appear.	
The rule of procedure.	<p>Sec. 3. The accused being present and the trial proceeding, it shall be conducted in accordance with Secs. 20, 21, and 22 of Canon IV. 3. The accused shall in all cases have the right to be a witness on his own behalf, subject to cross-examination in the same manner as any other witness. No testimony shall be received at the trial except from witnesses who have signed a declaration in the following words, to be read aloud before the witness testifies and to be filed with the records of the Court.</p>
Declaration of witnesses before testifying.	<p><b>"I, A. B., a witness on the trial of a presentment against the Right Reverend _____, a Bishop of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, now pending, do most solemnly call God to witness that the evidence I am about to give shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help me God."</b></p>
Court to express opinion on each charge or specification.	<p>Sec. 4. The Court, having fully heard the allegations and proofs of the parties, and having deliberately considered the same after the parties have withdrawn, every member of the Court sitting in the cause shall declare whether in his opinion the accused is guilty or not guilty, and with respect to each particular charge and specification contained in the presentment; and the accused shall be deemed not guilty upon every charge and specification upon which he shall not be pronounced guilty by a majority of the members of the Court sitting in the cause.</p>

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 5.**

---

Sec. 5. The decision of the Court as to all the charges and specifications shall be reduced to writing, and signed by those who assent to it; and the Court shall also, if the accused is found guilty of any charge or specification, determine and embody in the written decision the penalty which it shall adjudge should be imposed upon the accused; and the decision so signed shall be recorded as the judgment of the Court, and shall be judgment *nisi* until it becomes final as hereinafter stated.

Decision to be reduced to writing and signed.

Judgment.

Sec. 6. If the accused shall be found guilty of any charge or specification, he may file a motion for a new trial and for a modification of penalty. Any such motion or motions shall be filed within 30 days from the date of the filing of the decision, and the motion shall set forth all the reasons therefor, and no other shall be relied on at the hearing of the motion without the consent of the Court. The President of the Court shall set a place and time for hearing the motion and shall reconvene the Court to hear and determine the same.

Accused to be heard before sentence.

The Court may in the interest of justice grant a new trial or modify the penalty. If the motion for a new trial is granted the President of the Court shall set a time and place for the new trial, and notify the parties and the members of the Court of such time and place. If the motion for a new trial is overruled, the judgment *nisi* as to the guilt of the accused shall become final, but the Court in the exercise of its discretion may modify or change the penalty, and shall in writing signed by a majority of the Court direct what penalty is to be incorporated in the final judgment to be recorded by the Clerk. If no motion for a new trial or for modification of sentence shall be filed within the time limited for filing such motions, the Clerk of the Court shall on the next secular day enter, as final, the judgment rendered by the Court. An appeal from a final judgment of a Court for the Trial of a Bishop to the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, as provided in Canon IV. 6, may be taken within sixty days from the entry of such judgment.

New trial.

The Court may modify penalty.

After the entry of final judgment, the President of the Court shall appoint a time and place not less than 60 days thereafter for pronouncing sentence. At the time and place appointed, if the accused shall not have an appeal pending in the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, or the action of the Court of Review has not made it unnecessary for the Trial Court to proceed to pronounce sentence, the President of the Court or a member thereof designated in writing by a majority of the members thereof to do so, shall in the presence of the accused, if he shall see fit to attend, pronounce the sentence which has been adjudged by the Court, and direct the same to be recorded by the Clerk.

Sentence.

Sec. 7 (a). During the trial, exceptions in writing may be taken by either side to the admission or exclusion of evidence, or to any ruling of the Court, and such exceptions shall form part of the record of the case.

Exceptions to be part of record.

(b). Such record shall be kept by the Clerk, and inserted in a book to be attested by the signature of the President and Clerk. The record shall be in the custody of the Clerk and kept in the depository of the

Record, how kept and attested.

## TITLE IV

### CANONS 5, 6.

---

Registrar of the General Convention, and shall be open to the inspection of every member of this Church.

#### CANON 6.

##### Of Appeals to the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop

- Right of appeal. Sec. 1. A Bishop found guilty of any offense shall have the right to appeal from the judgment of the Trial Court to the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop; and in the case of a Bishop presented for holding and teaching doctrine contrary to that held by this Church, the Church Advocate shall have a like right to appeal.
- Notice of appeal. Sec. 2. Unless within sixty days from the date of entry of judgment in the Trial Court the appellant shall have given notice of the appeal, in writing, to said court, to the party against whom the appeal is taken, and to the President of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, assigning in said notice the reasons of appeal, he shall be held to have waived the right of appeal, although in its discretion the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop may entertain and hear an appeal not taken within such prescribed period.
- Time for hearing appeal. The President of the Court of Review upon receiving the notice of appeal shall appoint a time within 60 days thereafter for hearing the appeal and fix the place of the hearing, and at least 30 days prior to the day appointed written notice of such time and place shall be given by him to the other members of the Court and also to the appellant and appellee.
- Transcript of record to be laid before Court. Sec. 3. Upon notice of appeal being given, the Clerk of the Trial Court shall send to the Clerk of the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop a transcript of the record, including all the evidence, certified by the President and Clerk of the said Court, and the Clerk shall lay the same before the Court at its next session.
- Evidence. Sec. 4. No oral testimony shall be heard by said Court, nor, except by permission of the said Court shall any new evidence be introduced in said hearing.
- Power of Court to dispose of case. Sec. 5. The Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop may affirm or reverse any judgment brought before it on appeal, and may enter final judgment in the case, or may remit the same to the Trial Court for a new trial, or for such further proceedings as the interests of justice may require; *Provided, however,* that if the accused shall have been found not guilty by the Trial Court upon any of the charges and specifications upon which he has been tried other than that of holding and teaching doctrine contrary to that held by this Church, the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop shall have no power to reverse said findings; and, *Provided, further,* that sentence shall not be imposed upon a Bishop found guilty of holding and teaching doctrine contrary to that held by this Church unless and until the said finding shall have been approved by a vote of two-thirds of all the Bishops canonically assembled in said House, and entitled to vote.
- Proviso.
- In doctrinal cases, finding of guilt must be approved by vote of two-thirds of all Bishops.
- Sentence. Sec. 6. If the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop shall enter final judgment in the case, and if by said judgment the accused shall be found guilty of any of the charges or specifications upon which he has been tried, the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop shall determine the sentence. Before sentence is passed the accused shall

## TITLE IV CANONS 6, 7.

---

have the opportunity of being heard, if he has aught to say in excuse or mitigation. The sentence shall be pronounced by the Presiding Bishop, or such other Bishop as the Presiding Bishop shall designate, who shall thereupon give the notices thereof required by Canon IV. 12.

Sec. 7. In case of appeal, all proceedings in the Trial Court shall be stayed until such appeal be dismissed by the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop, or the said case be remitted by the said Court to the Trial Court. Should the appellant fail to prosecute his appeal before the said Court at the first session thereof, after the entry of the appeal, at which the same could be heard, the appeal may be dismissed for want of prosecution. In case the said Court dismiss the appeal, the Clerk of the Court shall immediately give notice of such dismissal to the Trial Court.

Stay of proceedings in Trial Court.

Dismissal of appeal.

The appellant may waive his appeal at any time before a hearing thereof has begun before the Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop. After said hearing has begun, he may waive his appeal only with the consent of the Court. In case the appeal is waived or dismissed, the Trial Court shall proceed as if no appeal had been taken.

Waiver of appeal.

### CANON 7.

#### Of a Minister in any Diocese Chargeable with Offense in Another

Sec. 1. If a Minister belonging to any Diocese shall have conducted himself in any other Diocese in such a way as to be liable to presentment under the provisions of Canon IV. 1, the Ecclesiastical Authority thereof shall give notice of the same to the Ecclesiastical Authority where he is canonically resident, exhibiting, with the information given, reasonable ground for presuming its truth. If the Ecclesiastical Authority, after due notice given, shall omit, for the space of three months, to proceed against the offending Minister, or shall request the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which the offense or offenses are alleged to have been committed, to proceed against him, it shall be within the power of the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese, within which the offense or offenses are alleged to have been committed, to institute proceedings according to the mode provided by the said Diocese.

Ecclesiastical Authority to give notice of the same.

Sec. 2. If a Minister shall come temporarily into any Diocese, under the imputation of having elsewhere been guilty of any of the offenses within the provisions of Canon IV. 1, or if any Minister, while sojourning in any Diocese, shall so offend, the Bishop, upon probable cause, may admonish such Minister and inhibit him from officiating in said Diocese. And if, after such inhibition, the said Minister so officiate, the Bishop shall give notice to all the Ministers and Congregations in said Diocese, that the officiating of said Minister is inhibited; and like notice shall be given to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese to which the said Minister belongs, and to the Recorder. And such inhibition shall continue in force until the Bishop of the first-named Diocese be satisfied of the innocence of the said Minister, or until he be acquitted on trial.

Minister of other Diocese charged with misdemeanor may be inhibited from officiating.

Sec. 3. The provisions of the last Section shall apply to Ministers ordained in foreign lands by Bishops in communion with this Church;

Ministers from foreign Countries.



**TITLE IV**  
**CANONS 7, 8, 9.**

---

but in such case notice of the inhibition shall be given to the Bishop from whose jurisdiction the Minister shall appear to have come, and also to all the Bishops exercising jurisdiction in this Church, and to the Recorder.

**CANON 8.**

**Of Renunciation of the Ministry**

Order of proceedings.

Sec. 1. If any Minister of this Church not under presentment shall declare, in writing, to the Ecclesiastical Authority of the Diocese in which he is canonically resident, his renunciation of the Ministry of this Church, and his desire to be removed therefrom, it shall be the duty of the Ecclesiastical Authority to record the declaration and request so made. The Bishop, being satisfied that the person so declaring is not amenable for any canonical offense, and that his renunciation of the Ministry is not occasioned by foregoing misconduct or irregularity, but is voluntary and for causes, assigned or known, which do not affect his moral character, shall lay the matter before the clerical members of the Standing Committee, and with their advice and consent he may pronounce that such renunciation is accepted, and that the Minister is released from the obligations of the Ministerial office, and that he is deprived of the right to exercise the gifts and spiritual authority as a Minister of God's Word and Sacraments conferred on him in his Ordination. He shall also declare in pronouncing and recording such action that it was for causes which do not affect the man's moral character, and shall, if desired, give a certificate to this effect to the person so removed from the Ministry. In all other cases of Renunciation of the Ministry, where there may be a question of foregoing misconduct or irregularity, the Bishop shall not pronounce sentence of deposition save with the consent of the Standing Committee of the Diocese. The Bishop shall give due notice of every such removal or deposition from the Ministry, in the form in which the same is recorded, and in accordance with the provisions of Canon IV. 12, Sec. 4(b).

Renunciation under liability to presentment.

Sec. 2. If a Minister making the aforesaid declaration of renunciation of his Ministry be under presentment for any canonical offense, or if he shall have been placed on trial for the same, the Ecclesiastical Authority to whom such declaration is made shall not consider or act upon such declaration until after the said presentment shall have been dismissed, or the said trial shall have been concluded and sentence, if any, pronounced. If the Ecclesiastical Authority to whom such declaration is made shall have ground to suppose that the person making the same is liable to presentment for any canonical offense, such person may, in the discretion of the said Ecclesiastical Authority, be placed upon trial for such offense, notwithstanding such declaration of renunciation of the Ministry.

**CANON 9.**

**Of the Abandonment of the Communion of this Church by a Bishop**

Facts to be certified by Standing Committee.

Sec. 1. If a Bishop abandon the communion of this Church, either by an open renunciation of the Doctrine, Discipline, or Worship of the Church, or by formal admission into any religious body not in communion with the same, or in any other manner, it shall be the

## **TITLE IV**

### **CANONS 9, 10, 11.**

---

duty of the Standing Committee of the Diocese of said Bishop to certify the fact to the Presiding Bishop, and with such certificate to send a statement of the acts or declarations which show such abandonment, which certificate and statement shall be recorded by the Presiding Bishop. The Presiding Bishop, with the consent of the three senior Bishops having jurisdiction in the United States, shall then suspend the said Bishop from the exercise of his Office and Ministry until such time as the House of Bishops shall investigate the matter.

Suspension of Bishop.

Sec. 2. The Presiding Bishop shall forthwith give notice to the said Bishop of such suspension, and that unless he shall, within six months, make declaration that the facts alleged in said certificate are false, and shall demand a trial, he will be liable to deposition from the Ministry. And if such declaration be not made within six months, as aforesaid, it shall be the duty of the Presiding Bishop to convene the House of Bishops to consider the case; and if the said House, by a majority of the whole number of Bishops entitled to vote, shall give their consent, the Presiding Bishop shall depose the said Bishop from the Ministry, and pronounce and record in the presence of two or more Bishops that he has been so deposed.

May demand a trial before deposition.

#### **CANON 10.**

##### **Of the Abandonment of the Communion of this Church by a Presbyter or Deacon**

Sec. 1. If any Presbyter or Deacon shall, without availing himself of the provisions of Canon IV. 8, abandon the communion of this Church, by an open renunciation of the Doctrine, Discipline, or Worship of this Church, or by a formal admission into any religious body not in communion with the same, or in any other way, it shall be the duty of the Standing Committee of the Diocese in which the said Presbyter or Deacon is canonically resident, to certify the fact to the Bishop, or, if there be no Bishop, to the Bishop of an adjacent Diocese, and with such certificate to send a statement of the acts or declarations which show such abandonment; which certificate and statement shall be recorded, and shall be taken and deemed by the Ecclesiastical Authority as an equivalent to a renunciation of the Ministry by the Minister himself; and the said Bishop shall then inhibit the said Minister from officiating in said Diocese for six months. Notice shall be given by the Bishop to the Minister so inhibited that, unless he shall, within six months, transmit to the Bishop a retraction of such acts, or make declaration that the facts alleged in said certificate are false, he will be deposed from the Ministry.

Standing Committee to certify the Bishop of the fact.

Sec. 2. If such retraction or declaration be not made within six months, as aforesaid, it shall be the duty of the Bishop to depose the said Minister from the Ministry, and to pronounce and record, in the presence of two or more Presbyters, that he has been so deposed.

Deposition after six months.

#### **CANON 11.**

##### **Of a Minister Absenting Himself from the Diocese, or Abandoning the Work of the Ministry**

Sec. 1. If a Minister shall have been absent for more than two years from the Diocese in which he is canonically resident without having

If without satisfactory reasons, to be presented for trial.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANONS 11, 12.**

---

given reasons satisfactory to the Bishop thereof; or if he shall engage in any secular calling or business without the consent of such Bishop, and shall refuse to engage in the work of the Ministry at the call of his Bishop, coupled with reasonable provision for his support, it shall be the duty of the Standing Committee of the Diocese, or of any two Presbyters of the same jurisdiction, the case being brought to their attention by the written statement of the Bishop, to present the offending Minister for trial for violation of his Ordination vows.

Name of Minister to be sent to Secretary of House of Bishops.

Sec. 2 (a). Whenever a Minister of this Church shall have been absent from the Diocese for a period of more than two years, and has failed to make the annual report, so that his whereabouts are unknown, or who, being a Minister in secular employment, has omitted for a period of two years to comply with the provisions of Canon III. 20, Section 4 (a), the Bishop may send the name of such Minister to the Secretary of the House of Bishops of this Church, who shall keep a list of such Ministers, noting in each instance the date when each such name was added to the List.

Restoration to diocesan roll.

(b). On application either by the Bishop or the Minister himself, or at the discretion of the Presiding Bishop, such a Minister may be placed again on a diocesan clergy roll, with the approval of the Bishop of the said jurisdiction.

While on List not canonically connected with Diocese.

(c). While a Minister's name remains upon the List of the Secretary of the House of Bishops he shall not be considered as canonically connected with his Diocese.

Removal from List and deposition.

(d). Any Minister whose name shall have been added to the said List, as aforesaid, and who has not complied with Canon III. 20, Section 4(d) (3), for a period of ten years may be considered to have abandoned the Ministry of this Church. The Presiding Bishop may, at his discretion, in the presence of two Presbyters, pronounce sentence of deposition upon such Minister, and authorize the Secretary of the House of Bishops to strike the name from the List and to give notice of the fact as provided in Canon IV. 12, Sec. 4 (b).

**CANON 12.**

**Of Sentences**

Sentences which may be imposed.

Sec. 1. There shall be three sentences which may be imposed; namely, *suspension*, *removal*, or *deposition*. A sentence of *suspension* may be imposed (a) after final conviction by a Trial Court, or (b) the filing of a waiver under Sec. 4 (d) of Canon IV. 12. A sentence of *removal* may be imposed when there has been a renunciation under Canon IV. 8 for causes which do not affect the moral character of the Minister. A sentence of *deposition* may be imposed (a) after final conviction by a Trial Court, (b) after the filing of a waiver under Section 4 (d) of Canon IV. 12, (c) when there has been a renunciation under Canon IV. 8 in cases where there may be a question of a foregoing misconduct or irregularity on the part of the Minister, or (d) abandonment of the communion of this Church as set forth in Canon IV. 10.

Terms and time of suspension to be specified.

Sec. 2. Whenever the penalty of suspension shall be inflicted on a Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon, in this Church, the sentence shall specify on what terms and on what conditions and at what time the penalty shall cease.

## TITLE IV

### CANON 12.

---

Sec. 3. Whenever a Minister is deposed from the Sacred Ministry, he is deposed therefrom entirely, and not from a higher to a lower Order in the same.

Deposition from Ministry.

Sec. 4 (a). If a Presbyter or Deacon is liable to sentence upon conviction by a Trial Court or upon affirmation of such conviction by a Court of Review, sentence shall be imposed by the Bishop of the jurisdiction in which the original trial of the accused was had, or in case such Bishop is disqualified or there be no Bishop of that jurisdiction, by another Bishop by the request of its Standing Committee, and it shall be lawful for the Bishop of the jurisdiction or for such other Bishop in his discretion to pronounce a lesser sentence than that adjudged by the Court. The Bishop to act shall appoint a time and place for pronouncing such sentence and shall cause notice thereof in writing to be served upon the accused in the manner provided in Canon IV. 2 at least thirty days before the time appointed.

Time and place.

Bishop may pronounce lesser sentence.

Notice to be given in writing.

(b). In the case of renunciation of the Ministry by a Minister as provided in Canon IV. 8, and in case of the abandonment of the communion of this Church by a Presbyter or Deacon as provided in Canon IV. 10, sentence of removal or deposition shall be pronounced in the presence of two or more Presbyters, and shall be entered in the official records of the Diocese in which the Presbyter or Deacon being removed or deposed is canonically resident. The Bishop who pronounces sentence of removal or deposition as provided in Canon IV. 8 or Canon IV. 10 shall give notice thereof in writing to the Presiding Bishop, the Recorder, the Secretary of the House of Bishops, the Secretary of the House of Deputies, and The Church Pension Fund. In giving such notice the Bishop who pronounces sentence of removal or deposition may request, for reason to be stated by him, that the sentence be held in confidence until the regular date of the next ensuing publication of the list of ordained Clergy of this Church. Unless the Presiding Bishop shall disapprove in writing, within thirty days, of the granting of the request that the sentence be held in confidence, those notified as above provided of the sentence of removal or deposition shall not publish or give notice of the same, but shall record the sentence in confidence in the official records kept by each of those to whom notice is sent as above provided.

Pronouncement and recording of sentence.

Officers to be notified.

(c). If the sentence to be pronounced upon a Presbyter or Deacon be deposition, the Bishop acting in the matter shall pronounce and record the same in the presence of two or more Presbyters.

In the presence of two Presbyters.

(d). In case an accused Presbyter or Deacon confesses the truth of the charges made against him, and in writing waives the right to a trial and submits himself to disciplinary action, the Bishop may in his discretion proceed at once to pronounce sentence.

In case trial right is waived.

(e). After a Presbyter or Deacon shall have been convicted by a Trial Court of a crime or immorality rendering him liable to canonical sentence, the Bishop of the Diocese shall have the right to inhibit him from all public ministrations. Such inhibition shall continue until a final judgment upon the case. When the sentence is of a suspension or deposition, the Bishop who pronounces the same shall without delay give notice thereof in writing to every Minister and Vestry in the Diocese in which the accused was canonically resident; to all the

May be inhibited.

Notice to be given.

**TITLE IV**  
**CANONS 12, 13.**

---

Bishops of the Church, and where there is no Bishop, to the Standing Committee of the Diocese; to the Recorder; and to the Secretary of the House of Bishops, who shall deposit and preserve such notice among the archives of the House. The notice shall specify under what Canon the said Minister has been suspended or deposed.

Opportunity to be given the accused.

Sec. 5. No sentence shall be pronounced until an opportunity shall have been given to the accused either on conviction or on confession to show cause, if any, why sentence should not be pronounced, and to offer any matter in excuse or palliation for the consideration of the Bishop to pronounce sentence.

Pronouncing sentence on a Bishop.

Sec. 6. When a Bishop is liable to sentence under a judgment of a Trial Court or under a judgment of a Court of Review of the Trial of a Bishop on an appeal to said Court of Review, the sentence to be imposed, the Bishop to pronounce the same, and the procedure to be followed in imposing sentence shall be as provided in the several Canons governing the procedure of said Courts:

Procedure.

Notice to be given.

Sec. 7. In the case of the suspension or deposition of a Bishop it shall be the duty of the Presiding Bishop to give notice of the same to the Ecclesiastical Authority of every Diocese of this Church, and to the Recorder and the Secretary of the House of Bishops, and to all Archbishops and Metropolitans, and all Presiding Bishops of Churches in communion with this Church.

Bishop adjudged guilty of misconduct not to officiate.

Sec. 8. A Bishop found guilty upon a presentment for a crime or immorality shall not, on the rendering of such judgment, and while the same continues unreversed, perform any episcopal or ministerial functions, except such as relate to the administration of the temporal affairs of his Diocese.

**CANON 13.**

**Of the Remission or Modification of Judicial Sentences**

In case of a Bishop.

Sec. 1. The House of Bishops may remit and terminate any judicial sentence which may have been imposed upon a Bishop, or modify the same so far as to designate a precise period of time, or other specific contingency, on the occurrence of which such sentence shall utterly cease, and be of no further force or effect; *Provided*, that no such remission or modification shall be made except at a meeting of the House of Bishops, during the session of some General Convention, or at a special meeting of the said House, which shall be convened by the Presiding Bishop on the application of any five Bishops, three months' notice, in writing, of the time, place, and object of the meeting being given to each Bishop; *Provided*, also, that such remission or modification be assented to by not less than a majority of the whole number entitled at the time to seats in the House of Bishops; and *Provided*, that nothing herein shall be construed to repeal or alter the provisions of Canon IV. 12.

Proviso.

In case of another Minister.

Sec. 2. A Bishop of this Church may, for reasons he shall deem sufficient, and with the advice and consent of two-thirds of all the members of the Standing Committee, remit and terminate a sentence of suspension pronounced in his jurisdiction upon a Minister. He may also, for reasons which he shall deem sufficient, remit and terminate any sentence of removal or deposition pronounced in his jurisdiction

**TITLE IV**  
**CANON 13.**

---

upon a Minister, but he shall exercise this power in the case of the removal or deposition only upon the following conditions:

- (1). That he shall act with the advice and consent of two-thirds of all the members of the Standing Committee;
- (2). That he shall submit his proposed action, with his reasons therefor, to the judgment of five of the Bishops of this Church, whose Dioceses are nearest to his own, and shall receive in writing, from at least four of the said Bishops, their approval of the said remission, and their consent thereto;
- (3). That before remitting such sentence, he shall require the person so removed or deposed, who desires to be restored to the Ministry, to subscribe to the declaration required in Article VIII. of the Constitution.

Consent of Standing Committee.

Submit his proposed action to five Bishops.

Declaration.

Sec. 3. In case such person was deposed for abandoning the communion of this Church, or, having been deposed by reason of his renunciation of the Ministry of this Church, or for other causes, he have also abandoned its communion, the Bishop, before granting such remission, shall be satisfied that such a person has lived in lay communion with this Church for one year next preceding his application for such remission.

The case of one deposed for abandoning the communion of the Church.

Sec. 4. In case the person applying for such remission shall be domiciled beyond the Diocese in which he was removed or deposed, the Bishop, before granting such remission, shall be furnished with written evidence of the approval of such application by the Bishop of the Diocese in which such person is domiciled.

If residing out of the Diocese.

Sec. 5. Whenever a Bishop shall remit and terminate any sentence of removal or deposition, he shall, without delay, give due notice thereof under his own hand, sending said notice in a sealed envelope to the Ecclesiastical Authority of every Diocese of this Church, and to the Recorder, giving, with the full name of the person restored, the date of the removal or deposition, and the Order of the Ministry to which he is restored.

Bishop to give notice of remission of sentence.



**TITLE V**  
**CANONS 1, 2.**

---

**TITLE V.**  
**CANONICAL LEGISLATION**

---

**CANON 1.**

**Of Enactment, Amendment, and Repeal**

Sec. 1. No new Canon shall be enacted, or existing Canon be amended or repealed, except by concurrent Resolution of the two Houses of the General Convention. Such Resolution may be introduced first in either House, and shall be referred in each House to the Committee on Canons thereof, for consideration, report, and recommendation, before adoption by the House; *Provided*, that in either House the foregoing requirement of reference may be dispensed with by a three-fourths vote of the members present.

Procedure required.

Sec. 2. Whenever a Canon which repealed another Canon, or part thereof, shall itself be repealed, such previous Canon or part thereof shall not thereby be revived or re-enacted, without express words to that effect.

Repeal of repeal no re-enactment.

Sec. 3. In all cases of future enactment, the same, if by way of amendment of an existing provision, shall be in substantially the following form: "Canon ... (or Section ..., or Clause ... of Section ..., of Canon....) is hereby amended to read as follows: (*here insert the new reading*)." And in the event of insertion of a new Canon, or of a new Section, or Clause, in a Canon, or of the repeal of an existing Canon, or of a Section or Clause, the numbering of the Canons, or of division of a Canon, which follow shall be changed accordingly.

Form of amendment.

Sec. 4 (a). The Committee on Canons of each House of the General Convention shall, at the close of each regular meeting of the General Convention, appoint two of its members to certify the changes, if any, made in the Canons, including a correction of the references made in any Canon to another, and to report the same, with the proper arrangement thereof, to the Secretary, who shall publish them in the Journal.

Certification of changes.

(b). The Committee on Amendments to the Constitution of each House of the General Convention shall, at the close of each regular meeting of the General Convention, appoint a similar committee of two of its members to certify in like manner the changes, if any, made in the Constitution, or proposed to be made therein under the provisions of Article XI. of the Constitution, and to report the same to the Secretary, who shall publish them in the Journal.

Sec. 5. All Canons enacted during the General Convention of 1943, and thereafter, and all amendments and repeals of Canons then or thereafter made, unless otherwise expressly ordered, shall take effect on the first day of January following the adjournment of the General Convention at which they were enacted or made.

When Canons take effect.

**CANON 2.**

**Of Terminology Used in these Canons**

Sec. 1. Whenever the term "Diocese" is used without qualification in these Canons, it shall be understood to refer both to "Dioceses" and to "Missionary Dioceses", as these terms are used in the Constitution, and also, whenever applicable, to the "Convocation of the American Churches in Europe".





---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

*The references in italics are to the Constitution*

Abandoning the work of the Ministry by a Minister .....	IV. 11
Abandonment of the Communion of this Church by a Bishop .....	IV. 9
Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 10
Absenting himself from his Diocese, Minister .....	IV. 11
Bishop .....	III. 18. 1
Accurate view of state of the Church .....	I. 5
Address, Bishop to make annually .....	III. 18. 3
<i>Adjournment in either House</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 5</i>
<i>Admission of Foreign Clergymen</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
<i>New Dioceses</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 1</i>
<i>Admonishment of Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon, only by a Bishop</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Advisory Council for President of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1(b)
Alienation of dedicated and consecrated church .....	II. 7. 1
Almoner, when to be appointed.....	III. 20. 2(e)
Alms and offerings for the poor .....	III. 20. 2(e)
<i>Alterations or amendments of this Constitution</i> .....	<i>Art. XI</i>
Amenability of Ministers and citations .....	IV. 2
<i>Amendments of Constitution, how made</i> .....	<i>Art. XI</i>
<i>or Additions to Book of Common Prayer, how made</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Amendment, enactment and repeal of Canons .....	V. 1
<i>Anglican Communion</i> .....	<i>Preamble</i>
<i>Appeal, Court of, on question of Doctrine, Faith or Worship</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Appeals to the Court for the Review of the Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 6
Apportionments of Executive Council to Dioceses.....	I. 4. 6(a)
Area Mission, see "Mission, Area"	
Armed Forces, Chaplain in	
Deacon not eligible .....	III. 23. 2(a)
Priest must have endorsement.....	III. 20. 9(a)
When not subject to certain restrictions.....	III. 20. 9(c)
<i>Armed Forces, Suffragan Bishop for</i> .....	<i>Art. II, 7</i>
Assessment for General Convention expenses .....	I. 1. 8
Assessors, Lay.....	IV. 3. 20(c)
Assistant Minister, election of, to be sent to the Bishop .....	III. 22. 5
Assistant Treasurer of General Convention, may be appointed .....	I. 1. 12
Bond .....	I. 1. 12
Audit of Treasurer's Report.....	I. 1. 7(a)
Authorization of Special Forms of Service .....	II. 5
Baptisms, Recorded in Parish Register .....	III. 20. 3(a)
To be signed by officiant .....	III. 20. 3(b)
Baptized Member, Removal of .....	I. 16. 5(a)
Certificate to be given .....	I. 16. 5(a)
Enrollment of.....	I. 16. 5(a)
Bible, Translations of .....	II. 2
Versions read in Church .....	II. 2

---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

<i>Bishops, Consecrated for Foreign Lands</i> .....	Art. III
<i>Not eligible to office of Diocesan or Coadjutor of any Diocese in United States</i> .....	Art. III
<i>Armed Forces, Suffragan for</i> .....	Art. II, 7
<i>Consecration, Age required for</i> .....	Art. II, 2
<i>Consecration of</i> .....	Art. II, 2
<i>Consent to election of</i> .....	Art. II, 2
<i>Court of Review of, to be composed of Bishops</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Court of Trial of</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Declaration of</i> .....	Art. VIII
<i>Diocesan and Coadjutor eligible for election to other jurisdiction</i> .....	Art. II, 8
<i>Must have served five years</i> .....	Art. II, 8
<i>Resignation from present jurisdiction required</i> .....	Art. II, 8
<i>Right of succession (Coadjutor) to be renounced</i> .....	Art. II, 8
<i>Ecclesiastical Authority, Suffragan may become</i> .....	Art. II, 5
<i>Election of</i> .....	Art. II, 1
<i>Jurisdiction of</i> .....	Art. II, 3
<i>Resignation of</i> .....	Art. II, 6
<i>Resignation required at age seventy-two</i> .....	Art. II, 9
<i>Rights of Diocesan and Bishop Coadjutor on creation of new Diocese</i> .....	Art. V, 2
<i>Rights of Diocesan and Coadjutor in case of cession of territorial jurisdiction</i> .....	Art. V, 6
<i>Suffragan</i> .....	Art. II, 4
<i>Suffragan may be elected for Armed Forces</i> .....	Art. II, 7
<i>To pronounce sentence</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Bishops, Ordination and Consecration of</i> .....	III. 14
<i>Bishop-elect to advise Presiding Bishop of acceptance or declination</i> .....	III. 14. 1(e)
<i>Bishop presiding at consecration has direction of service</i> .....	III. 14. 1(b)
<i>Consent of House of Deputies to House of Bishops</i> .....	III. 14. 1(a)
<i>During recess General Convention, evidence of election to Standing Committees and Bishops</i> .....	III. 14. 1(c)
<i>If Bishops shall not consent in three months</i> .....	III. 14. 1(c)
<i>If Standing Committees shall not consent</i> .....	III. 14. 1(d)
<i>If unable discharge duties, Coadjutor may be elected</i> ..	III. 14. 2(a)
<i>Medical examination</i> .....	III. 14. 1(a)
<i>Presiding Bishop take order for</i> .....	III. 14. 1(b)
<i>Testimonials to Secretary of House of Deputies</i> .....	III. 14. 1(a)
<i>Abandonment of Communion of Church</i> .....	IV. 9
<i>Facts certified by Standing Committee</i> .....	IV. 9. 1
<i>Inhibition</i> .....	IV. 9. 1
<i>Trial before deposition</i> .....	IV. 9. 2
<i>Adjudged guilty of misconduct, not to officiate</i> .....	IV. 12. 8
<i>Assemble, at call and under presidency of Presiding Bishop, as House of Bishops or Bishops in Council</i> .....	I. 2. 4(a)(3)
<i>Consecration of, for foreign lands</i> .....	III. 17
<i>Of second or third Bishop for foreign lands</i> .....	III. 17. 1(2)
<i>Evidence of facts</i> .....	III. 17. 1(3)
<i>Presiding Bishop to present to House of Bishops</i> ..	III. 17. 1(4)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Presiding Bishop take order for .....	III. 17. 2
Record to Registrar .....	III. 17. 4
Statement of facts presented to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 17. 1
Court of Review of Trial of .....	IV. 3. 15-17
Disability of Presiding .....	I. 11. 6
Duties of .....	III. 18
Charges and Pastoral Letters .....	III. 18. 3
Convention may place vacant Diocese under charge	
of a .....	III. 18. 6(b)
No other Bishops to be invited .....	III. 18. 6(c)
Council of Conciliation .....	III. 18. 2(b)
Ecclesiastical Authority in case of absence of .....	III. 18. 5
Enrolled among clergy of Diocese of choice .....	III. 18. 9(c)
Must approve any encumbrance of real property ....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
Perform episcopal offices in vacant Dioceses .....	III. 18. 6(a)
Record of official acts .....	III. 18. 2(c)
Resignation .....	III. 18. 8
Required at age seventy-two .....	III. 18. 7
Statement at annual Convention .....	III. 18. 4
Still subject to Canons if retired .....	III. 18. 9(b)
To reside in jurisdiction .....	III. 18. 1
Visit to churches .....	III. 18. 2
When perform episcopal acts if retired .....	III. 18. 9(a)
Duty of Minister <i>re</i> visitation of .....	III. 20. 2(c), (d)
Episcopal acts by, who have resigned jurisdiction .....	III. 18. 9(a)
For foreign lands, consecration of .....	III. 17
Letters of Consecration .....	I. 1. 5(c)
May demand investigation .....	IV. 4. 4
Missionary Bishops eligible as Diocesan .....	III. 15. 5
Coadjutor .....	III. 15. 4
Concurrence of General Convention .....	III. 15. 2(a)
Consent of Bishops and Standing Committees .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Election during recess .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Election of .....	III. 15. 2(a)
Notice of election .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Province may nominate .....	III. 15. 2(b)
Retiring allowance for .....	III. 18. 8(e)
Mode of presenting for trial .....	IV. 4. 2, 3
Not in communion with this Church, admission of Ministers	
ordained by .....	III. 12
Offenses for which may be tried .....	IV. 1. 1
Conviction of immorality in Civil Court .....	IV. 1. 2
Time within which presentment must be made .....	IV. 1. 3
Presentment of .....	IV. 4. 2-9
Charged with offenses .....	IV. 4. 3
Copy to be served .....	IV. 4. 8
Disability of Presiding Bishop .....	IV. 4. 9
For erroneous doctrine, by any ten Bishops .....	IV. 4. 2
Supporting brief must be filed .....	IV. 4. 2
Opportunity to be given accused to answer, with	
supporting brief .....	IV. 4. 2
Two-thirds majority of all Bishops must consent to	
proceeding to trial .....	IV. 4. 2

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

If no ground for trial .....	IV. 4. 6
In case Board disagrees .....	IV. 4. 7
May demand investigation .....	IV. 4. 4
New evidence.....	IV. 4. 6
Presentment, preparation of .....	IV. 4. 6
Presiding Bishop summon Board of Inquiry.....	IV. 4. 5
Duties of Board .....	IV. 4. 5
Testimony to be preserved .....	IV. 4. 5
To be in writing .....	IV. 4. 3
Receiving aid, to report to Executive Council .....	I. 4. 7
Resignation of .....	III. 18. 8(a)
For strategic reasons.....	III. 18. 8(f)
Retirement allowance for .....	III. 18. 8(e)
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 18. 7
House of Deputies to be notified .....	III. 18. 8(d)
Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance.....	III. 18. 8(b)
Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops .....	III. 18. 7(a)
Procedure in case of failure to resign .....	III. 18. 7(c)
Record to be made .....	III. 18. 7(b)
To be tendered to Presiding Bishop.....	III. 18. 7(a)
Resigned, may be enrolled in Diocese in which he chooses to reside .....	III. 18. 9(c)
Retiring allowance for Missionary Bishops and for Bishops holding office created by General Convention .....	III. 18. 8(e)
Seat and vote in Province .....	I. 8. 5
Sentence of suspension for failure to tender self for trial .....	IV. 5. 2(c)
Shall deliver a charge to his Clergy .....	III. 18. 4
Successor may be elected in advance of resignation or retirement.....	III. 14. 3
Suffragan Bishop may be elected as .....	III. 16. 7(a)
Alternative procedure .....	III. 16. 7(b)
Cannot be Rector of a parish.....	III. 16. 8
Consent to validity of election as.....	III. 16. 7(a)
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 16. 6(a)
Procedure in case of failure so to resign .....	III. 16. 6(c)
Trial of, Court for .....	IV. 3. 14; IV. 5
Court of Review .....	IV. 3. 15-17
Visit each church every three years .....	III. 18. 2(a)
Vote and Seat in Province.....	I. 8. 5
When Coadjutor, Suffragan or Missionary Bishop may act on Ordination.....	III. 9. 3(a)
When vacancy occurs in Area Mission, charge devolves on Presiding Bishop.....	III. 15. 7
<i>Bishop Coadjutor, and the rights of Diocesan .....</i>	<i>Art. V, 2</i>
<i>May be elected to another jurisdiction .....</i>	<i>Art. II, 8</i>
<i>To have seat and vote in House of Bishops .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 2</i>
<i>Translation of .....</i>	<i>Art. II, 8</i>
Bishop Coadjutor, Ecclesiastical Authority in case of absence of Bishop.....	III. 18. 5
May be elected if Bishop unable discharge duties .....	III. 14. 2(a)
Certificate that every requirement complied with.....	III. 14. 2(c)
Consent of Bishop.....	III. 14. 2(a)

---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Consents required if for extent of work.....	III. 14. 2(a)
Declaration of belief and conformity.....	III. 14. 4
Duties assigned to be specified.....	III. 14. 2(a)
Grounds for election to be communicated .....	III. 14. 2(b)
Only one in a Diocese .....	III. 14. 2(d)
Missionary Bishop eligible as .....	III. 15. 5
Concurrence of General Convention .....	III. 15. 6(a)
Consent of Bishops and Standing Committees .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Election of Missionary Bishop as.....	III. 15. 6(a)
Election during recess.....	III. 15. 6(b)
Notice of election .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Missionary, <i>See</i> Missionary Bishops	
Resignation of .....	III. 18. 8
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 18. 7
House of Deputies to be notified .....	III. 18. 8(d)
Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance....	III. 18. 8(b)
Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops .....	III. 18. 8(b)
Procedure in case of failure so to resign .....	III. 18. 7(c)
Record to be made .....	III. 18. 7(b)
To be tendered to Presiding Bishop.....	III. 18. 7(a)
Suffragan Bishop may be elected as .....	III. 16. 7(a)
Alternative procedure .....	III. 16. 7(b)
When may act on Ordination .....	III. 9. 3(a)
Bishop, Suffragan— <i>See</i> Suffragan Bishops.	
Board of Inquiry.....	IV. 3. 21
Duties of.....	IV. 3. 21
Vacancies in .....	IV. 3. 18(b)
Bonding of Treasurers .....	I. 1. 10, 12; 6. 1(3)
<i>Book of Common Prayer, Alterations of, or additions to, how made ..</i>	<i>Art. X</i>
<i>Amendments to Tables of Lessons and Rubrics .....</i>	<i>Art. X</i>
<i>Special Forms of Worship .....</i>	<i>Art. X</i>
<i>“Trial Use” authorized.....</i>	<i>Art. X</i>
Book of Common Prayer, Standard .....	II. 3
Authorization of editions.....	II. 3. 5
Copies of Standard to Dioceses.....	II. 3. 4
Copy conformity .....	II. 3. 2
Custodian of.....	II. 3. 7
Inaccuracies corrected .....	II. 3. 3
<i>Proposed revisions of—trial use .....</i>	<i>Art. X</i>
Translations of .....	II. 3. 5
Trial-use materials, duties of Custodian <i>re</i> .....	II. 3. 6
Variations in, during triennium.....	II. 3. 6(c)
What Standard is .....	II. 3. 1
Book of Common Prayer—Notice of amendments to .....	I. 1. 1(e)
To be used by Religious Communities .....	III. 12. 7. 5
Boundaries of Parishes .....	I. 12. 2(a)
Budget of General Convention.....	I. 1. 11
Budget of Executive Council .....	I. 4. 6
Burials—Recorded in Parish Registers .....	III. 20. 3(a)
Business Methods in Church Affairs .....	I. 6
Audit of Accounts .....	I. 6. 1(5)
Bonding of Treasurers .....	I. 6. 1(3)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Deposit of Funds .....	I. 6. 1(1)
Dioceses to enforce by Canon .....	I. 6. 2
Insurance .....	I. 6. 1(6)
Record of Trust Funds .....	I. 6. 1(2)
Reports .....	I. 6. 1(7)
Standard Methods prescribed .....	I. 6. 1
Candidates for Holy Orders (see also "Holy Orders, Candidates for")	III. 2
Examinations in Special Cases .....	III. 5. 2; III. 8
Shall not sign certificates required by Canons of Ordination	III. 9. 4(b)
Canon, Church Pension Fund, General Convention may amend .....	I. 7. 8
Canons, Repeal of repeal no re-enactment .....	V. 1. 2
Certification of changes .....	V. 1. 4(a)
Enactment, Amendment and Repeal .....	V. 1
Form of altering.....	V. 1. 3
Time of new, taking effect.....	V. 1. 5
<i>Canons and Constitution of New Diocese</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 4</i>
Chalice, administration of, by Lay Reader .....	III. 25. 5
Must be specially licensed .....	III. 25. 5
Chaplains, Examining, General Board of .....	III. 7
Chaplains in Armed Forces .....	III. 20. 9
Charges and Pastoral Letters .....	III. 18. 3; III. 20. 1(f)
Church, Abandonment of Communion by a Bishop .....	IV. 9
Abandonment of Communion by Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 10
Admission of Ministers ordained by Bishops in communion with this.....	III. 13
Certificates required .....	III. 13. 1(a)
If Deacon, residential requirement before ordered Priest..	III. 13. 2
Residential requirement before taking charge of parish	III. 13. 1(b)
Subjects of special examination .....	III. 13. 1(b)
Chief representative of.....	I. 2. 4(a) (1)
Presiding Bishop as, to speak God's Word to Church and World .....	I. 2. 4(a) (2)
Consecration of .....	II. 7
Consent of Bishop and Standing Committee to encumber or alienate .....	II. 7. 1
Also to dispose.....	II. 7. 1
Members, deemed to be baptized persons .....	I. 5. 1
Ministers and their duties .....	III. 20
Alms and offerings for poor .....	III. 20. 2(e)
Appointment of Almoner .....	III. 20. 2(e)
Control of worship vested in Rector .....	III. 20. 1(a)
Duties.....	III. 20. 2
Duty <i>re</i> Bishop's visitation .....	III. 20. 2(d)
In case of two or more Congregations.....	III. 20. 5(a)
Exception .....	III. 20. 5(a)
Priest in charge has control of Missionary Cure .....	III. 20. 1(c)
Reading of Pastoral Letter .....	III. 20. 2(f)
Rector has control Parish buildings.....	III. 20. 1(b)
Register of official acts .....	III. 20. 3(a)
Responsible for music in Congregation .....	II. 6. 1
State of Congregation presented to Bishop .....	III. 20. 2(d)
To keep list of families .....	III. 20. 3(c)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

To keep Parish Register .....	III. 20. 3(a)
When leaving ecclesiastical employment .....	III. 20. 4
Ministers ordained in Churches not in communion with this.....	III. 12
Conditions of ordination.....	III. 12. 2
Ministers who have not received Episcopal ordination.....	III. 12. 5(a)(2)
Pre-ordination requirements .....	III. 12. 2
Special prefaces authorized.....	III. 12. 5(b), (c)
Certificates required .....	III. 12. 1(a), 3(a)
Ministers ordained in Foreign Countries by Bishops in communion with this .....	III. 13
Certificate required before he can officiate in this.....	III. 13. 1(a)
If Deacon, to reside in United States one year before ordered Priest.....	III. 13. 2
Letters Dimissory or credentials presented before taking charge of Parish.....	III. 13. 1(b)
Mode of securing accurate view of State of the Church .....	I. 5
Music of the.....	II. 6
Standing Commission on .....	II. 6. 2
No person to minister in this, unless duly authorized.....	II. 24
Sentence in case of abandonment of communion of .....	IV. 9. 2; IV. 10. 2
Special forms of service for worshiping in foreign language.....	II. 5
Church Advocates, appointment and duties of.....	IV. 3. 9, 23
Expenses of.....	IV. 3. 24
May have assistants .....	IV. 3. 23
Must be Communicants.....	IV. 3. 23
Church Affairs, Business Methods in .....	I. 6
Audit of Accounts .....	I. 6. 1(4)
Bonding of Treasurers .....	I. 6. 1(3)
Deposit of Funds .....	I. 6. 1(1)
Dioceses to enforce by Canon.....	I. 6. 2
Insurance .....	I. 6. 1(6)
Record of Trust Funds .....	I. 6. 1(2)
Reports.....	I. 6. 1(7)
Standard methods prescribed.....	I. 6. 1
Church and Parish Buildings, Rector entitled to use and control of.....	III. 20. 1(b)
Church Army, Commissioned Officers of, as Lay Readers .....	III. 25. 1
Church Finance.....	I. 6
Church Pension Fund.....	I. 7
Administer pension system .....	I. 7. 1
Life, accident, health benefits .....	I. 7. 1
Assessments .....	I. 7. 3
Clergy in continuous service .....	I. 7. 5
Election of Trustees .....	I. 7. 2
General Convention may amend Canon on .....	I. 7. 8
Initial Reserve Fund .....	I. 7. 6
Limit on allotment.....	I. 7. 4
Maximum pension .....	I. 7. 5
Merger with General Clergy Relief Fund.....	I. 7. 7
Minimum pension .....	I. 7. 5
Persons not included under .....	III. 10. 10(d)



## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Record of payments to, must accompany Letters Dimissory	III. 20. 11
Retiring Allowance	I. 7. 5
Royalties	I. 7. 3
To be notified of certain depositions	IV. 12. 4(b)
To establish rules	I. 7. 5
Trustees, election of	I. 7. 2
Vacancies in, how filled	I. 7. 2
Churches, consecrated, not to be encumbered, alienated, etc.	II. 7. 1
Churchwardens	III. 20. 5; III. 22. 1
Church Workers, Professional	III. 28
How certified	III. 28. 1
List to be kept by Bishop	III. 28. 2
Qualifications	III. 28. 1
Removal to other jurisdiction	III. 28. 2
To report to Bishop annually	III. 28. 3
Citations, and amenability of Ministers	IV. 2
Clergy, Chargeable with offense in another Diocese	IV. 7
Certificate before removal	III. 20. 6(e)
Consent to officiate in another's Cure	III. 20. 5(a)
Control of church and Parish buildings	III. 20. 1(b)
Duties	III. 20
Duty <i>re</i> Bishop's visitation	III. 20. 1(d)
Keep list of families	III. 20. 3(c)
License to officiate	III. 20. 7
Limitation of transfer	III. 20. 6(g)
List of, in regular standing to Recorder	I. 1. 6(b)
List of, inactive	IV. 11. 2
Neglecting to perform services	III. 20. 5(b)
Non-parochial to report	I. 5. 1
Priest in charge has control of Missionary Cure	III. 20. 1(c)
Register of Official Acts	III. 20. 3(a)
Testimonial to officiate abroad	III. 20. 8(a)
Form of	III. 20. 8(a)
Record of	III. 20. 8(b)
Testimonials when coming to a Diocese	III. 20. 6(a)
Date of transfer	III. 20. 6(b)
To keep Parish Register	III. 20. 3(a)
Transferred to Diocese, not to be, if refused ordination therein	III. 20. 6(f)
When Letters Dimissory not accepted	III. 20. 6(d)
When Letters Dimissory void	III. 20. 6(c)
Clergy, Pension Fund for	I. 7
Recorder of Ordinations, Appointment of	I. 1. 6(a)
Relief Fund, Merger with Church Pension Fund	I. 7. 7
<i>Requisites for ordination</i>	<i>Art. VIII</i>
<i>Admission of Foreign Clergy</i>	<i>Art. VIII</i>
<i>Declaration</i>	<i>Art. VIII</i>
Clergy and Congregations, Seeking affiliation with this Church	I. 15. 1
Ministers regularly ordained	I. 15. 3
Oversight with Bishop of Diocese	I. 15. 5
Shall have seats but no vote	I. 15. 4
Non-episcopally ordained Ministers	I. 15. 2; III. 12. 5(a)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Coadjutor Bishops— <i>See</i> Bishop Coadjutor.	
Color no bar to Church membership .....	I. 16. 4
Commission to investigate charges against a Minister in a foreign land.....	I. 14. 10
Commissioner to take depositions, may be appointed .....	IV. 3. 22
Commissions and Committees, Joint, of the General Convention	
Differences between .....	I. 1. 2(b)
How constituted.....	I. 1. 2(a)
Members of, how appointed .....	I. 1. 2(c)
Membership to include member of Executive Council .....	I. 1. 2(c)
Reports to be made	
Annually, to Presiding Bishop and President of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 2(d)
To succeeding General Convention .....	I. 1. 2(e)
Standing Commissions	
On Church Music .....	II. 6. 2
On Structure .....	I. 1. 2(f)
Standing Liturgical Commission .....	II. 4
Common Prayer, Book of— <i>See</i> Book of Common Prayer.	
Communicants, Names of all, recorded in Parish Registers .....	III. 20. 3(c)
Certificate .....	I. 16. 5(a)
Duty of Rector or Minister.....	I. 16. 5(c)
Enrollment .....	I. 16. 5(a)
Notice of enrollment .....	I. 16. 5(a)
Of any Church to benefit.....	I. 16. 5(b)
Removal of.....	I. 16. 5(a)
Repulsion .....	I. 16. 6
Communion alms and contributions, how applied .....	III. 20. 2(e)
Communion of this Church, Abandonment of, by a Bishop .....	IV. 9
by a Presbyter or Deacon.....	IV. 10
Communities, Religious .....	III. 27
Confirmation, Duty of Ministers to prepare young persons and others for .....	III. 20. 2(c)
Duty of minister <i>re</i> Bishop's visitation .....	III. 20. 2(d)
Recorded in Parish Register .....	III. 20. 3(a)
Congregations and Parishes .....	I. 12
Belong to Diocese where Parish is situated .....	I. 12. 1
Canon not affect legal rights of property .....	I. 12. 3(c)
In foreign lands .....	I. 14
Appointment of Ministers.....	I. 14. 13
Certify desire to be received by General Convention .....	I. 14. 5
Council of Advice and functions .....	I. 14. 9
Differences between Minister and Congregation.....	I. 14. 12
Formation of new .....	I. 12. 2(b); I. 14. 3
How accepted .....	I. 14. 6
Ministers charged with canonical offense .....	I. 14. 10
Proviso .....	I. 14. 10
Organization of .....	I. 14. 3
Presiding Bishop assign jurisdiction.....	I. 14. 7
Recognize Constitution and Canons .....	I. 14. 4
Who may officiate temporarily.....	I. 14. 2

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Congregations seeking affiliation with this Church.....	I. 15. 1
Ministers regularly ordained .....	I. 15. 3
Have seats but no vote.....	I. 15. 4
Oversight with Bishop of Diocese.....	I. 15. 5
Non-episcopally ordained Ministers .....	I. 15. 2
Special forms of Service for worshiping in foreign language.....	II. 5
Consecrated Churches, On Dedicated and, Canon on .....	II. 7
Consecrated Churches, not to be encumbered, alienated, etc. ....	II. 7. 1
Consecration, Letters of .....	I. 1. 5(c)
Consecration of Bishops .....	III. 14
Bishop presiding at, have direction of service .....	III. 14. 1(b)
Consent of House of Deputies and House of Bishops.....	III. 14. 1(a)
During recess General Convention, evidence of election sent to Standing Committees and Bishops.....	III. 14. 1(c)
If Bishops not consent in three months .....	III. 14. 1(c)
If Standing Committees or Bishops not consent .....	III. 14. 1(d)
Presiding Bishop take order for .....	III. 14. 1(b)
Testimonials to Secretary of House of Deputies .....	III. 14. 1(a)
Consecration of Bishops for foreign lands.....	III. 17
Consecrations—Registrar keep record of .....	I. 1. 5(b)
Registrar prepare Letters of .....	I. 1. 5(c)
<i>Constitution, Alterations, or amendments of this .....</i>	<i>Art. XI</i>
<i>and Canons of new Dioceses .....</i>	<i>Art. V, 4</i>
Constitution, Notice of amendments to.....	I. 1. 1(e)
Conventions— <i>See</i> Diocesan Conventions.	
Primary, of New Diocese .....	I. 9. 1
<i>Court of Appeal on questions of Doctrine, Faith or Worship.....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>Court of Review.....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
Appeals to .....	IV. 3. 6
<i>On Trial of Bishops to be composed of Bishops .....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 14
of Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 2-13
<i>Court of Trial of Bishops .....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>Court of Review for, to be composed of Bishops.....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
For the Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 14; IV. 5
<i>Court of Trial of Presbyters and Deacons .....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
Courts, their membership and procedure .....	IV. 3
Cures, Filling of vacant .....	III. 22
Custodian of Standard Book of Common Prayer.....	II. 3. 7
Deacon, Abandonment of communion of Church .....	IV. 10
Deposition .....	IV. 10. 2
Standing Committee certify Bishop of fact .....	IV. 10. 1
Diocesan Court for trial of .....	IV. 3. 1
Courts of Review for trial of .....	IV. 3. 2-13
Limited examination for admission as, in special cases.....	III. 5. 2(a)
Not to be ordered Priest until he has served one full year.....	III. 11. 2
If ordained in foreign country, until he has resided in United States one year.....	III. 13. 2
Not to be Rector of a Parish.....	III. 23. 2(a)
Offenses for Trial .....	IV. 1
Consent for presentment.....	IV. 1. 1

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Conviction of immorality in Civil Court .....	IV. 1. 2
Time within which presentment must be made .....	IV. 1. 3
Presentment of a .....	IV. 1. 1
<i>Requisites for ordination</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
<i>Declaration</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
Sentence of suspension.....	IV. 12. 1
Transfer from one Diocese to another .....	III. 23. 4
Deacons—Canon on .....	III. 23
Act under direction of Rector.....	III. 23. 2(b)
If no Rector, to act under direction of a Priest.....	III. 23. 2(c)
Not Rector of Parish or Chaplain in Armed Forces.....	III. 23. 2(a)
Not transferred until examination for Priesthood passed .....	III. 23. 3
Subject to Ecclesiastical Authority .....	III. 23. 1
Women as.....	III. 26
Deaconesses (see “Women in Diaconate”)	
<i>Deacons and Presbyters—Trial of</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Debt, Power to encumber property restricted.....	I. 6. 3
<i>Declaration to be made before consecration or ordination</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
Deposition from the Ministry .....	IV. 12. 2
Of a Bishop .....	IV. 12. 6
Of a Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 12. 4(c)
<i>Deputies from Missionary Dioceses</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
Deputies— <i>See</i> House of	
Provisional Deputies .....	I. 1. 3(c)
Testimonials to Secretary.....	I. 1. 1(c)
To be chosen not later than year prior to that in which the	
General Convention shall meet .....	I. 1. 4
If not so chosen, how seated .....	I. 1. 4
To special Conventions .....	I. 1. 3
Diaconate, Ordination to the .....	III. 10
Age of candidate .....	III. 10. 1
Declaration of belief and conformity .....	III. 10. 9
If no Parish, by whom certificate to be signed .....	III. 10. 7
If Parish has no Minister, certificate may be signed by some	
Presbyter .....	III. 10. 6
Papers to be laid before Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 5
Physical examination required.....	III. 10. 3
Reasons for form of certificate to be stated .....	III. 10. 7(c)
Recommendation from Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 4
Testimonial of Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 8
To be Candidate for eighteen months.....	III. 10. 2
Women in.....	III. 26
Dimissory Letters .....	III. 20. 5
<i>Diocesan and the Bishop Coadjutor, Rights of the</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 2</i>
Diocesan Conventions, Journals of, to be sent to Secretary of House	
of Deputies.....	I. 1. 1(c)
Diocesan Courts for trial of Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 1, 20
Diocesan Finance Committee or Department of Finance .....	I. 6. 1, 2
Diocesan Report Blanks .....	I. 5. 2
Diocese, Approval of Ecclesiastical Authority of sentence of person	
residing out of .....	IV. 13. 4

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

<i>Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor chosen agreeably to rules prescribed by Convention of</i> .....	Art. II
<i>Cession of territorial jurisdiction over part of, to adjoining Diocese</i> .....	Art. V, 8
<i>Approval of General Convention or of Bishops and Standing Committees</i> .....	Art. V, 8
<i>Mutual consent</i> .....	Art. V, 8
<i>Cession of territorial jurisdiction of part of, for new Missionary Diocese</i> .....	Art. VI, 2
<i>Retrocession of</i> .....	Art. VI, 2
<i>Constitution and Canons of new</i> .....	Art. V, 4
<i>Ecclesiastical authority in case of absence of Bishop</i> .....	III. 18. 5
<i>Convention place vacant Diocese under charge of a Bishop</i> .....	III. 18. 6(b)
<i>No other Bishop invited</i> .....	III. 18. 6(c)
<i>If vacant, any Bishop invited perform episcopal offices</i> III. 18. 6(a)	
<i>Resigned Bishop may be enrolled among clergy of Diocese of choice</i> .....	III. 18. 9(c)
<i>Election of Suffragan Bishop</i> .....	Art. II, 4
<i>May be placed in charge on death of Bishop</i> .....	Art. II, 5
<i>Enforce Business Methods in Church Affairs by Canon</i> .....	I. 6. 2
<i>Minister absenting himself from</i> .....	IV. 11
<i>Ministers chargeable with offense in another</i> .....	IV. 7
<i>Missionary Dioceses and, united into Provinces</i> .....	Art. VII
<i>New, created in any Province</i> .....	I. 8. 2
<i>Not more than two Suffragan Bishops in a</i> .....	III. 16. 3
<i>Only one Bishop Coadjutor in a</i> .....	III. 14. 2(d)
<i>Person refused ordination in any, transferred to Diocese</i> ....	III. 20. 6(f)
<i>Prescribe manner in which Deputies to General Convention shall be chosen</i> .....	Art. I, 4
<i>Representatives in Provincial Synod</i> .....	I. 8. 7
<i>Standing Committee in every</i> .....	Art. IV
<i>Standing Committee to be Bishop's Council of Advice</i> .....	Art. IV
<i>Dioceses, Admission of new</i> .....	Art. V
<i>Dioceses and Orders, vote by</i> .....	Art. I, 4
<i>Dioceses, New</i> .....	I. 9
<i>Division of existing Dioceses</i> .....	I. 9. 3
<i>Election of Bishop and Deputies</i> .....	I. 9. 5
<i>Primary Convention of</i> .....	I. 9. 1
<i>How called when no Bishop</i> .....	I. 9. 2
<i>Reunion of</i> .....	I. 9. 6(c)
<i>Union with General Convention</i> .....	I. 9. 4
<i>Vacant</i> .....	III. 18. 6
<i>Dispensation for Candidate of language other than English</i> .....	III. 2. 5(d)
<i>In special cases</i> .....	III. 2. 5(c)
<i>Dissolution of the Pastoral Relation</i> .....	III. 21
<i>Division of Dioceses—See New Dioceses.</i>	
<i>Doctrine, Faith or Worship, Court of Appeal on</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society</i> .....	I. 3
<i>Board of Directors</i> .....	I. 3. II
<i>Constitution</i> .....	I. 3
<i>Constitution may be amended by General Convention</i> .....	I. 3. IV

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Name .....	I. 3. I
Officers—President, Vice-President, Treasurer and Secretary ....	I. 3. III
Due celebration of Sunday .....	II. 1
Duties of Bishops .....	III. 18
Ministers— <i>See</i> Deacons, Presbyters, Missionary Bishops .....	III. 19
Ecclesiastical Authority— <i>See</i> Standing Committee.	
Certificate of, when necessary .....	I. 11. 3
Deacon, subject to .....	III. 23. 1
Lay Readers to procure license from, or Bishop .....	III. 25. 1
Letters Dimissory, may be granted by, to Candidates.....	III. 4. 2(b)
Minister to present testimonial to, on removing .....	III. 20. 6(a)
Notice of election of Rector to be sent to .....	III. 22. 3
Notice of termination of sentence of suspension to be given ..	IV. 13. 5
Procedure as to, in case of disability of the Bishop.....	I. 11. 3
<i>Standing Committee to act as, when no Bishop in charge</i> .....	Art. IV
<i>Suffragan Bishop may become</i> .....	Art. II, 5
When Clerical members of Standing Committee to act as ....	III. 4. 1(b)
Ecclesiastical Court, Necessity for .....	IV. 1. 1
<i>Election of Bishops, Bishops Coadjutor and Missionary Bishops</i> .....	Art. II
Election of Rector .....	III. 22. 1-4
<i>Election of Suffragan Bishops</i> .....	Art. II
Ember Seasons, ordinations to be held at .....	III. 9. 1
Candidate to report in each .....	III. 3. 5(a)
Enactment, amendment and repeal of Canons .....	V. 1
<i>Episcopal Church, The, alternate name of Church</i> .....	Preamble
Episcopate, corporate, of Church, Presiding Bishop as chief representative of.....	I. 2. 4(a) (2)
Ethnic origin no bar to Church membership .....	I. 16. 4
<i>Europe, Convocation of American Churches in, Deputies from</i> .....	Art. I
Evidence, duty of all members of this Church to give, in ecclesiastical trials .....	IV. 2. 4
Examinations of a Candidate desiring to be ordered Deacon .....	III. 7
Examining Chaplains, General Board of.....	III. 7
Composition .....	III. 7. 1
How chosen .....	III. 7. 1
To elect officers .....	III. 7. 1
May prepare guidelines .....	III. 7. 3
Shall prepare annually a General Ordination Examination ..	III. 7. 2(a)
To conduct, administer, and evaluate .....	III. 7. 2(a)
To recommend to Diocesan Commission how any deficiency may be overcome .....	III. 7. 2(c)
To report on each person examined to Bishop and Seminary	
Dean .....	III. 7. 4
If report questioned <i>re</i> Faith or Worship, reference to Provincial Court of Appeal.....	III. 7. 5
To report on work to General Convention and House of Bishops.....	III. 7. 6
Executive Council .....	I. 4
Accountability .....	I. 4. 1(b)
Bishops receiving aid to report .....	I. 4. 7(a)
Dioceses to report to .....	I. 4. 7(b)
<i>Ex officio</i> members of .....	I. 4. 1(c)

---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Filling of vacancies .....	I. 4. 2(b)
Function .....	I. 4. 1(a)
How constituted .....	I. 4. 1(c)
Meetings .....	I. 4. 4(a)
Mission fields, employment of professional persons, not members of this Church .....	I. 4. 9(b)
Missionaries, qualifications .....	I. 4. 9(a)
Notice of allotted objectives .....	I. 4. 6(c)
Diocese to allot to Parish .....	I. 4. 6(d)
Officers .....	I. 4. 3
Powers of Council .....	I. 4. 2(c)
Program, Budgets and Apportionment .....	I. 4. 6(a)
Joint Session for presentation of .....	I. 4. 6(b)
President of .....	I. 4. 3
President, House of Deputies to be <i>ex officio</i> member .....	I. 4. 1(c)
Quorum .....	I. 4. 4(b)
Report Form .....	I. 4. 6(e)
Reports of .....	I. 4. 1(b), 8
Salaries .....	I. 4. 8
Shall pay retiring allowance to certain resigned Missionary Bishops .....	III. 18. 8(f)
Shall submit to General Convention Program for coming triennium .....	I. 4. 6(a)
Term of office of members .....	I. 4. 2(b)
Expenses of General Convention .....	I. 1. 8
Presiding Bishop .....	I. 1. 8
Recorder .....	I. 1. 6(e)
Registrar .....	I. 1. 5(e)
Trials, etc. ....	IV. 3. 24
<i>Faith, Doctrine or Worship, Court of Appeal on</i> .....	
<i>Art. IX</i>	
Filling of vacant Cures .....	III. 22
Fiscal year .....	I. 6. 1(8)
Forces, Armed, Deacon not permitted to be Chaplain in .....	III. 23. 2(a)
Foreign Bishops, Consecration for Foreign Lands .....	III. 17
Consecration of second or third Bishop .....	III. 17. 1(2)
Evidence of facts .....	III. 17. 1(3)
Presiding Bishop to present to House of Bishops .....	III. 17. 1(4)
Presiding Bishop to take order for consecration .....	III. 17. 2
Record to Registrar .....	III. 17. 4
Statement of facts presented to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 17. 1
<i>Foreign Clergy, Admission of</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
Foreign Countries, Ministers ordained by Bishops in communion with this Church in .....	III. 13
Certificate required before he can officiate in this Church .....	III. 13. 1(a)
Letters Dimissory or Credentials presented before taking charge of a Parish .....	III. 13. 1(b)
If Deacon, to reside in United States one year before ordered Priest .....	III. 13. 2
Medical examination .....	III. 13. 1(c)
<i>Foreign Lands, Bishops consecrated for</i> .....	<i>Art. III</i>
<i>Not eligible to office of Diocesan, or Bishop Coadjutor of any     Diocese in United States</i> .....	<i>Art. III</i>

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Foreign Lands, Congregations in.....	I. 14
Appointment of Ministers .....	I. 14. 13
Certify desire to be received by General Convention .....	I. 14. 5
Council of Advice and functions .....	I. 14. 9
Differences between Minister and Congregation .....	I. 14. 12
Formation of new.....	I. 14. 11
How accepted.....	I. 14. 6
Ministers charged with canonical offense.....	I. 14. 10
Proviso.....	I. 14. 10
Organization of .....	I. 14. 3
Presiding Bishop assign jurisdiction .....	I. 14. 7
Recognize Constitution and Canons.....	I. 14. 4
Who may officiate temporarily .....	I. 14. 2
Foreign Lands, Consecration of Bishops for.....	III. 17
Consecration of second or third Bishop .....	III. 17. 1(2)
Evidence of facts .....	III. 17. 1(3)
Presiding Bishop to present to House of Bishops.....	III. 17. 1(4)
Presiding Bishop to take order for consecration of Bishop for .....	III. 17. 2
Record to Registrar .....	III. 17. 4
Statement of facts presented to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 17. 1
Foreign Lands, Ministers chargeable with offense in another Diocese .....	IV. 7
Special testimonials of ordination in.....	III. 13. 1(a)
Foreign Language—Special forms of Service for Worship.....	II. 5
Forms of Service, authorization of special, for Congregations worshiping in foreign languages .....	II. 5
Fund, Contingent, of General Convention .....	I. 1. 8
Funds, Deposit of .....	I. 6. 1(1)
<i>General Convention, Adjournment of either House of.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 5</i>
<i>Composition of .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 1</i>
<i>Houses of, shall sit and deliberate separately .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 1</i>
<i>re Cession and retrocession of territorial jurisdiction.....</i>	<i>Art. V, 8</i>
<i>re Courts for Trial of Bishops.....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>re Courts of Review.....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>re Mission Areas .....</i>	<i>Art. VI, 1</i>
<i>re New Dioceses, upon conditions.....</i>	<i>Art. V</i>
<i>re Provinces .....</i>	<i>Art. VII</i>
<i>re Reduction of representation in .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>re Suffragan Bishops.....</i>	<i>Art. II, 4</i>
<i>Place of meeting of, may be changed by Presiding Bishop with       consent of Executive Council .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
<i>Presiding Bishop, with consent of Executive Council, may appoint       another place or date.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
<i>Special meetings may be provided by Canon.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
<i>Time and Place of Meeting .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
General Convention	
Assessments for expenses for Presiding Bishop .....	I. 1. 8
Canon on .....	I. 1
Deputies, when to be chosen.....	I. 1. 4
If chosen otherwise, how seated.....	I. 1. 4
Deputies to Special Conventions.....	I. 1. 3(b)
Desire of a Congregation in foreign land to be received by .....	I. 14. 4



## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Expenses of.....	I. 1. 8
Indebtedness, limit of.....	I. 1. 9
Joint Committees and Commissions, <i>see under</i> Commissions and Committees	
Joint Session of .....	I. 4. 6(b)
For presentation of program of Executive Council.....	I. 4. 6(b)
Presiding Bishop to have right of calling for and presiding at.....	I. 2. 4(a)(4)
Journals and papers delivered to Registrar .....	I. 1. 5(a)
Letters of Consecration .....	I. 1. 5(c)
Notices of amendments to Constitution and Prayer Book .....	I. 1. 1(e)
Organization of .....	I. 1. 1(a)
Pay Expenses of Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 24
Provisional Deputies .....	I. 1. 3
Record of Consecrations .....	I. 1. 5(b)
Recorder, Data and Statistics to.....	I. 1. 6(b)
Recorder of, and duties .....	I. 1. 6(a)
Registrar, expenses of .....	I. 1. 5(e)
May be Historiographer .....	I. 1. 5(d)
Registrar of.....	I. 1. 5(a)
Appointment in case of vacancy .....	I. 1. 5(g)
Rules and Orders of House of Deputies.....	I. 1. 1(g)
Secretary	
Responsible for printing Journal .....	I. 1. 1(j)
Secretary of House of Deputies to be elected as.....	I. 1. 1(j)
To receive notice of changes in Canons .....	V. 1. 4(a)
To receive notice of changes in Constitution .....	V. 1. 4(b)
Secretary and Treasurer entitled to seats but not votes.....	I. 1. 1(f)
Special meetings, of Deputies thereto .....	I. 1. 3(a)
How called .....	I. 1. 3(a)
Testimonials of Deputies and Diocesan Journals to Secretary .....	I. 1. 1(c)
To concur in election of Missionary Bishop as Diocesan .....	III. 15. 6(b)
To ratify formation of new Diocese .....	I. 9. 1
Treasurer and Duties.....	I. 1. 7(a)
Treasurer and Secretary entitled to seats but not votes.....	I. 1. 1(f)
Treasurer of	
Appointment of Assistant.....	I. 1. 12
Bonding of .....	I. 1. 10
Appointment of, in case of vacancy.....	I. 1. 7(b)
Limit of borrowing .....	I. 1. 9
To borrow for .....	I. 1. 9
To submit budget .....	I. 1. 11
Godparents, to be instructed by Minister .....	III. 20. 2(b)
Historiographer .....	I. 1. 5(d)
Holy Communion, Repulsion from .....	I. 16. 6
Holy Matrimony, Solemnization of .....	I. 17
Baptism of one party necessary.....	I. 17. 2(d)
Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority to render judgment as to status .....	I. 18. 2(a)
Canonical requirements .....	I. 17. 1
Conditions.....	I. 17. 2
Declaration of intention.....	I. 17. 3(d)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Doctrine of this Church respecting.....	I. 17. 2(b)
Free consent required .....	I. 17. 2(c)
Instruction on nature of .....	I. 17. 2(e)
Judgments of Bishop to be in writing.....	I. 18. 2(b)
Legal requirements.....	I. 17. 1
Marital status following civil annulment or dissolution .....	I. 18. 2(a)
Application to Bishop.....	I. 18. 2(a)
Bishop or Ecclesiastical Authority to render judgment ..	I. 18. 2(a)
Judgment to be in writing .....	I. 18. 2(b)
Judgment to be permanently recorded.....	I. 18. 2(b)
Provisions apply only to Church members .....	I. 18. 1
Minister may decline to officiate.....	I. 17. 4
One party to be baptized.....	I. 17. 2(d)
Recorded in Register .....	I. 17. 3(c)
Regulations respecting .....	I. 18
Apply only to Church Members .....	I. 18. 2(a)
Re-marriage — Conditions	
Final decree.....	I. 18. 3(a)
Instruction on continuing responsibilities .....	I. 18. 3(g)
Consultation with, and consent of, Bishop .....	I. 18. 3(c)
Report to Bishop.....	I. 18. 3(c)
Restrictions on Clergy officiating .....	I. 18. 3
Restrictions on members of Church .....	I. 18. 3
Signatures required for record.....	I. 17. 3(c)
Thirty days' notice.....	I. 17. 3(a)
Witnesses required .....	I. 17. 3(b)
Holy Orders, Candidates for .....	III. 2. 3
Admission of, lies with Bishop .....	III. 2. 7
Record to be made .....	III. 2. 7
Who is to be notified .....	III. 2. 7
Annual reports to be made by	
Candidate in Ember Weeks .....	III. 3. 5(a)
Seminary or supervisor of study.....	III. 3. 4(a)
Reports on file .....	III. 3. 4(b)
Application to become	
Consult with Pastor .....	III. 2. 2(a)
Desire to be made known to Bishop .....	III. 2. 2(b)(1)
May apply to other Bishop .....	III. 2. 2(b)(2)
Information to be supplied .....	III. 2. 2(c)
Interview with Bishop desirable .....	III. 2. 2(d)
Mental and physical examination.....	III. 2. 2(d)
Reports on file .....	III. 2. 2(d)
Ministry Commission to interview, evaluate and recommend to Bishop .....	III. 2. 4(a)
Canonical connection of .....	III. 3. 3(a)
Evidence of previous education.....	III. 2. 9(a)
If non-graduate under 32, to be examined .....	III. 2. 9(b)
Results to other Bishops to whom he might apply ..	III. 2. 9(e)
If non-graduate over 32, dispensed .....	III. 2. 9(c)
In certain cases, dispensation for non-graduate .....	III. 2. 9(d)
In lieu of examination, other evidence acceptable.....	III. 2. 9(e)
Ministry Commission and Bishop to be satisfied of competence.....	III. 2. 9(f)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Standing Committee to receive report on non-graduates ..	III. 2. 10
Guidance of, responsibility of Bishop.....	III. 3. 2(a)
Commission on Ministry to assist .....	III. 1. 3
Letters Dimissory may be granted to .....	III. 3. 3(b)
Normal standard of learning and examination .....	III. 5
Not to sign certificates <i>re</i> ordination .....	III. 9. 4(b)
Papers to be laid before Standing Committee	
Application .....	III. 2. 5(a)(1)
Commission on Ministry recommendation .....	III. 2. 5(a)(2)
Letter from Minister and Vestry .....	III. 2. 5(a)(4)
If no Minister, Alternative .....	III. 2. 5(a)(4)
If no Parish, Alternative.....	III. 2. 5(a)(4)
Reason for variance to be stated.....	III. 2. 5(a)(4)
Transcript of record and evaluation from	
Seminary, if student .....	III. 2. 5(a)(3)
Testimonial from Standing Committee .....	III. 2. 6
To report self for canonical examination within	
three years .....	III. 3. 5(b)
Ordination to the Diaconate .....	III. 10
Age of ordinand .....	III. 10. 1
Declaration of belief and conformity .....	III. 10. 9
If no Parish, by whom certificate to be signed .....	III. 10. 7(a)
Reasons for form to be stated .....	III. 10. 7(b)
If Parish has no Minister, certificate may be signed by some Presbyter .....	III. 10. 6
Of women .....	III. 26
Papers to be laid before Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 5
Physical examination required.....	III. 10. 3
Recommendation from Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 8
Testimonial of Standing Committee .....	III. 10. 8
To be a Candidate eighteen months .....	III. 10. 2
Ordination to the Priesthood.....	III. 11
Age of ordinand .....	III. 11. 1
Declaration of belief and conformity .....	III. 11. 8
Evidence of appointment to some Cure.....	III. 11. 9
If no Parish, by whom certificate to be signed .....	III. 11. 6(a)
Reasons for form to be stated .....	III. 11. 6(b)
If Parish has no Minister, certificate signed by some Presbyter .....	III. 11. 5
Papers to be laid before Standing Committee .....	III. 11. 4
Recommendation of Standing Committee .....	III. 11. 3
Testimonial of Standing Committee.....	III. 11. 7
To be Deacon for one year and Candidate for two years	III. 11. 2
Presenting Priest may attend examination .....	III. 5. 3(b)
Record of modified requirements to be kept .....	III. 8. 3
Rejected, to renew Candidacy before ordination .....	III. 3. 6
Removal of name of Candidate.....	III. 3.5(b), (c)
Report of Examining Chaplains .....	III. 2. 6
Requirements may be modified in special cases.....	III. 8. 1
Seminary examinations not to supersede canonical examinations .....	
	III. 5. 3(a)
Holy Orders, General Provisions respecting Ordination .....	III. 9

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Canonical requirements complied with before appointment of ordination .....	III. 9. 2
Certificates to be in words prescribed.....	III. 9. 4(a)
In vacant jurisdiction another Bishop may be asked to act ..	III. 9. 3(c)
Mode of applying for dispensation .....	III. 9. 5
No Candidate to sign certificate .....	III. 9. 4(b)
Ordinations to be held at Ember Seasons.....	III. 9. 1
Requirements as to signature of Standing Committee.....	III. 9. 4(c)
Requirements as to signature of Vestry .....	III. 9. 4(d)
Special testimonials in foreign lands.....	III. 9. 7(b)
Standing Committee give reasons for declining to recommend	III. 9. 6
Testimonials and Certificates to apply to ordinations beyond United States.....	III. 9. 7(a)
When Bishop Coadjutor, Suffragan Bishop or Missionary Bishop may act .....	III. 9. 3(a)
Holy Orders, Ministers ordained in foreign countries by Bishop in communion with this Church.....	III. 13
Certificate required before officiating in this Church.....	III. 13. 1(a)
Deacon to reside in United States one year before ordered Priest .....	III. 13. 2
Letters Dimissory or Credentials presented before taking charge of Parish .....	III. 13. 1(b)
Holy Orders, Ministers ordained in Churches not in communion with this Church .....	III. 12
Alternatives at Ordination.....	III. 12. 5(a)
Declarations and certificates required.....	III. 12. 1(a), 3(a)
Ministers who have not received Episcopal ordination .....	III. 12. 5(b)
Pre-ordination requirements .....	III. 12. 2(a)
Special prefaces authorized .....	III. 12. 5(b)
Holy Scriptures, versions of, authorized to be read in Church .....	II. 2
<i>House of Bishops, Composition of.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 2</i>
<i>May establish Missionary Areas.....</i>	<i>Art. VI, 1</i>
<i>Quorum for transaction of business.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 2</i>
<i>Seat and vote in, who to have .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 2</i>
House of Bishops, may elect Missionary Bishops.....	III. 15. 1(b)
Missionary Bishops entitled to seat in .....	III. 15. 5
Secretary of, special list of inactive clergy .....	IV. 11. 2
To choose Court for Trial of Bishop .....	IV. 3. 14(a)
Review of Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 15
<i>House of Deputies, Composition of.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>Number in each Order in.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>Quorum for transaction of business.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>Votes by Dioceses and Orders in .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>When majority vote shall suffice in .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
House of Deputies—Deputies, When to be chosen .....	I. 1. 4
Deputies to special Convention.....	I. 1. 3(b)
Diocesan Journals sent to Secretary of.....	I. 1. 1(c)
Organization .....	I. 1. 1(a)
President of.....	I. 1. 1(b)
Advisory Council for .....	I. 1. 1(b)
<i>Ex officio</i> member of all Joint Committees and Commissions.....	I. 1. 2(d)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

May appoint deputy .....	I. 1. 2(d)
How elected .....	I. 1. 1(b)
Limitation on number of terms .....	I. 1. 1(b)
To be of different order from that of Vice-President .....	I. 1. 1(b)
To name Presbyters and Lay Persons to Joint Committees and Commissions .....	I. 1. 2(c)
To serve <i>ex officio</i> as member of Executive Council .....	I. 4. 1(c)
Presiding Bishop may appear before and address .....	I. 2. 4(a)(4)
Provisional Deputies .....	I. 1. 3(c)
Rules and Orders, to be in force .....	I. 1. 1(g)
Secretary of, Election of .....	I. 1. 1(a)
Appointment of, in case of vacancy .....	I. 1. 1(i)
Duties of .....	I. 1. 1(d)
To act in case of vacancy in offices of President and Vice-President of .....	I. 1. 1(h)
Testimonials of Deputies and Diocesan Journals sent to Secretary of .....	I. 1. 1(c)
To receive notice of resignations of Bishops .....	III. 18. 8(d)
Vacancies in, how supplied .....	I. 1. 3(c)
Vice-President of .....	I. 1. 1(b)
How elected .....	I. 1. 1(b)
Duties of .....	I. 1. 1(b)
Limitation on number of terms .....	I. 1. 1(b)
To be of different order from that of President .....	I. 1. 1(b)
When to consent to consecration of a Bishop .....	III. 14. 1(a)
Inhibition of Ministers .....	IV. 7. 2
Insurance on all buildings .....	I. 6. 1(6)
Jerusalem Bible authorized .....	II. 2
Joint Committees and Commissions— <i>See under</i> Commissions and Committees.	
Journals and Minutes of both Houses of General Convention to be delivered to Registrar .....	I. 1. 5(f)
Journals of Diocesan Conventions to be sent to Secretary of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1(c), I. 5. 3(a)
Judicial Sentence— <i>See under</i> Sentences.	
<i>Jurisdiction of a Bishop</i> .....	Art. II, 3
Jurisdiction of Missionary Bishop .....	III. 19. 1
Laity, Regulations respecting .....	I. 16
Communicant of any Church to benefit .....	I. 14. 5(b)
Duty of Rector or Minister .....	I. 14. 5(c)
Enrollment .....	I. 14. 5(a)
Member and communicant defined .....	I. 14. 1-3
Race, color, ethnic origin, no bar to .....	I. 14. 4
Notice of enrollment .....	I. 14. 5(a)
Removal of communicant or baptized member .....	I. 14. 5(a)
Certificate .....	I. 14. 5(a)
Repulsion of communicants .....	I. 14. 6
Lay Assessors .....	IV. 3. 20(c)
To be communicants .....	IV. 3. 20(c)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Lay Ministries, Canon on.....	III. 29
Lay Readers .....	III. 25
Administration of Chalice by .....	III. 25. 5
Church Army, Commissioned Officers, as .....	III. 25. 1
Directions and restrictions.....	III. 25. 4
License required .....	III. 25. 1
May be specially licensed to administer Chalice .....	III. 25. 5
Qualifications and requirements .....	III. 25. 2
<i>Lectionary, Amendments to</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Legislation, may be recommended to either House by Presiding	
Bishop.....	I. 2. 4(4)
<i>Legislation, may originate in either House of General Convention</i> ....	<i>Art. I, 1</i>
<i>Must be adopted and authenticated by both Houses</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 1</i>
<i>Lessons and Rubrics, Amendments to Tables of</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Letters of Consecration.....	I. 1. 5(c)
Dismissory .....	III. 20. 6
Candidates for Holy Orders may have .....	III. 4. 2(b)
To be accompanied by statement of pension payments ..	III. 20. 11
When not accepted .....	III. 20. 5(d)
When void .....	III. 20. 5(c)
Of Transfer.....	I. 16. 5
Pastoral.....	III. 18. 3; III. 20. 2(f)
Testimonial to Officiate Abroad .....	III. 20. 8(a)
License, Minister officiating more than two months, to have .....	III. 20. 7
Life, accident, and health benefits .....	I. 7. 1
Church Pension Fund authorized to administer .....	I. 7. 1
List of Clergy in regular standing .....	I. 1. 6(b)
Congregations in foreign lands .....	I. 14. 6
Ordinations .....	I. 1. 6(b)
Liturgical Commission—Standing .....	II. 4
Appointment of members of .....	II. 4. 2(b)
Custodian of Standard Book of Common Prayer as <i>ex officio</i>	
member .....	II. 4. 2(a)
Duties .....	II. 4. 1
Expenses .....	II. 4. 3
How composed.....	II. 4. 2(a)
Officers of .....	II. 4. 2(c)
Lord's Day to be observed.....	II. 1
Marriage— <i>See Holy Matrimony.</i>	
Minister may decline to solemnize .....	I. 17. 4
Record in Parish Register .....	I. 17. 3(c)
Solemnized in presence of at least two witnesses.....	I. 17. 3(b)
To be recorded .....	I. 17. 3(c)
Matrimony— <i>See Holy Matrimony.</i>	
Solemnization of.....	I. 17
<i>Meetings of General Convention, Time and Place of</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
<i>Special, may be provided by Canon</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
Members, deemed to be baptized persons .....	I. 5. 1
Minister— <i>See</i> <i>Presbyter; Priest; Rector.</i>	
Minister Absenting himself from Diocese more than two years ....	IV. 11. 1
Abandoning work of Ministry.....	IV. 11. 1

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

If without reason, presented for trial.....	IV. 11. 1
Name sent to Secretary of House of Bishops .....	IV. 11. 2
Assistant, Election of.....	III. 22. 5
Duties of.....	III. 20
Certificate before removal.....	III. 20. 6(e)
Consent to officiate in another's Cure .....	III. 20. 5(a)
Control of worship of Parish vested in Rector .....	III. 20. 1
Duty <i>re</i> Bishop's visitation.....	III. 20. 2(d)
License to officiate.....	III. 20. 7
Limitation of transfer .....	III. 20. 6(g)
Neglecting to perform services.....	III. 20. 5(b)
Priest in charge has control of Missionary Cure .....	III. 20. 1(c)
Rector have control church and Parish buildings.....	III. 20. 1(b)
Register of Official Acts .....	III. 20. 3
Responsible for music in Congregation .....	II. 6
Testimonial when coming to a Diocese.....	III. 20. 6(a)
Date of transfer .....	III. 20. 6(b)
Testimonial to officiate abroad.....	III. 20. 8(a)
Form of.....	III. 20. 8(a)
Record of .....	III. 20. 8(b)
To instruct Godparents .....	III. 20. 2(b)
To instruct parents of infants baptized .....	III. 20. 2(b)
To instruct on Missionary Program .....	III. 20. 2(a)
To instruct on nature of Marriage.....	I. 17. 2(e)
To keep Parish Register .....	III. 20. 3
To make annual report to Bishop .....	I. 5. 1
To maintain list of families .....	III. 20. 3(c)
Transfer to Diocese if refused ordination .....	III. 20. 6(f)
When Letters Dimissory not accepted.....	III. 20. 6(d)
When Letters Dimissory void .....	III.20. 6(c)
In cases where there are two or more Congregations or churches	
in one Cure.....	III. 20. 5(a)
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 20. 10
To read Pastoral Letter or cause to be distributed to	
Congregation, when issued.....	III. 20. 2(f)
Under presentment, to be inhibited.....	IV. 1. 4
When settled.....	III. 22. 4
Minister, Amenability of, and Citations .....	IV. 2
Election of Assistant .....	III. 22. 5
In this Church, no one to minister unless duly authorized .....	III. 24
May decline to officiate at marriage.....	I. 17. 4
Not having received ordination in this Church .....	III. 12. 1
Not to have seat in more than one Convention.....	I. 12. 1
Ordained by Bishops not in communion with this Church,	
Admission of.....	III. 12. 1
Ordained in foreign countries by Bishops in communion with	
this Church.....	III. 13
To give instruction on the nature of marriage.....	I. 17. 2(e)
To make annual Report to Bishop .....	I. 5. 1
Settled when engaged for at least one year .....	III. 22. 4
Minister, Chargeable with offense in another Diocese .....	IV. 7
Ecclesiastical Authority to give notice .....	IV. 7. 1

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

From foreign countries .....	IV. 7. 3
Inhibited from officiating.....	IV. 7. 2
Renunciation of Ministry.....	IV. 8
Minister, in foreign lands, charged with canonical offense.....	I. 14. 10
Appointment.....	I. 14. 13
Differences between Congregation and .....	I. 14. 12
Proviso .....	I. 14. 10
Minister, leaving ecclesiastical employment .....	III. 20. 4
Conditions and procedure .....	III. 20. 4(a)
Penalty for omitting reporting .....	III. 20. 4(b)
Grace period.....	III. 20. 4(b)
Procedure on removing to other jurisdiction .....	III. 20. 4(c)
Options.....	III. 20. 4(d)
Penalty .....	III. 20. 4(c)
Minister, non-episcopally ordained .....	I. 15. 2
Oversight with Bishop of Diocese.....	I. 15. 5
Regularly ordained seeking affiliation with this Church .....	I. 15. 3
Seats but no vote .....	I. 15. 4
Ministry, Abandoning work of the .....	IV. 11
<i>Bishop pronounce sentence of suspension, removal or deposition ..Art. IX</i>	
<i>To specify terms, conditions and duration of suspension .....</i>	<i>Art. IX</i>
Renunciation of .....	IV. 8
Order of proceedings.....	IV. 8. 1
Sentence for .....	IV. 12. 3(b)
Under liability of presentment .....	IV. 8. 2
Sentence of deposition from .....	IV. 12. 3
Ministry, Commission on .....	III. 1. 1
Appointment of, in every jurisdiction.....	III. 1. 1
Duties .....	III. 1. 3
May adopt rules for work .....	III. 1. 2
To conduct, evaluate certain examinations.....	III. 1. 4
To interview Candidates & Ordinands .....	III. 1. 5
With Bishop	
Give guidance, pastoral care, to Deacons, etc. ....	III. 1. 6
Supervise continuing education .....	III. 1. 7
Mission, Area	
Bishop of, to be assigned by House of Bishops .....	I. 10. 2(c)
Function as Missionary Bishop .....	I. 10. 2(c)
May appoint boards to perform functions.....	I. 10. 2(c)
May authorize forms of worship .....	I. 10. 2(c)
House of Bishops may establish .....	I. 10. 2(a)
May undertake ecumenically .....	I. 10. 2(b)
In case of vacancy in episcopate, charge devolves on Presiding	
Bishop .....	III. 15. 7
May be admitted as Diocese of this Church .....	I. 10. 3(a)
May Organize as extra-provincial Diocese .....	I. 10. 2(e)
May be terminated by House of Bishops .....	I. 10. 2(e)
May be transferred to	
Another Church .....	I. 10. 2(e)
Autonomous Province.....	I. 10. 2(e)
Notice of establishment to all Primates, etc. ....	I. 10. 4
Special responsibility of whole Church.....	I. 10. 1

---



## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Missionaries, Qualifications of .....	I. 4. 9(a)
Missionary Bishops .....	III. 15
Duties of .....	III. 19
Election	
By Diocesan Convention .....	III. 15. 1(a)
By House of Bishops .....	III. 15. 1(c)
By Province or Regional Council .....	III. 15. 1(b)
Election of, as Diocesan, Coadjutor or Suffragan .....	III. 15. 6(a)
Consent of Bishops and Standing Committees .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Concurrence of General Convention .....	III. 15. 6(a)
During recess .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Notice of election .....	III. 15. 6(b)
Eligibility as Diocesan, Coadjutor or Suffragan .....	III. 15. 5
Proviso: after 5 years from date of his consecration .....	III. 15. 5
Entitled to seat in House of Bishops .....	III. 15. 5
Evidence of election .....	III. 15. 2(c)
Exercise of jurisdiction .....	III. 19. 1
House of Bishops may elect with consent of House of Deputies or Standing Committees .....	III. 15. 2(a)
Medical examination .....	III. 15. 2(a)
Pension for, who has resigned jurisdiction .....	III. 18. 8(e)
Report to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 19. 2
Resignation of .....	III. 18. 8(c)
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 18. 7(a)
House of Deputies to be notified .....	III. 18. 8(d)
Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance .....	III. 18. 7(b)
Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops .....	III. 18. 7(a)
Procedure in case of failure so to resign .....	III. 18. 7(c)
Record to be made .....	III. 18. 7(b)
Retiring allowance for such retired Bishop .....	III. 18. 8(e)
To be tendered to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 18. 7(a)
Synod of Province may nominate .....	III. 15. 2(b)
To make full reports to the Executive Council .....	I. 4. 7(a)
<i>Missionary Bishops, Chosen in accordance with Canons of General Convention .....</i>	<i>Art. II, 1</i>
Missionary Cure, Priest in charge in control of .....	III. 20. 1(c)
<i>Missionary Diocese, Organization .....</i>	<i>Art. VI, 3</i>
Missionary Diocese	
Annual Convention in every .....	I. 10. 3(b)
Composition .....	I. 10. 3(b)
To adopt annual program & budget and provide for administration .....	I. 10. 3(c)
To elect Standing Committee and Deputies .....	I. 10. 3(b)
To review requests for grants in aid .....	I. 10. 3(c)
Bishops of, elected in accordance with Canons .....	I. 10. 3(d)
Bishop Coadjutor for .....	III. 15. 4
Cession of territory .....	<i>Art. VI, 2</i>
Retrocession .....	<i>Art. VI, 2</i>
Deputies from .....	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
Enforce business methods by Canon .....	I. 6. 2
Establishment of .....	<i>Art. VI, 1</i>
General Convention may	
Grant autonomy .....	I. 10. 3(e)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Reduce to status of Area Mission .....	I. 10. 3(f)
Transfer to other Province or Regional Council.....	I. 10. 3(e)
Governed by Canons of own Convention.....	I. 10. 3(a)
<i>Organization of</i> .....	<i>Art. VI, 3</i>
Suffragan Bishop for .....	III. 16. 4
Synod of Province may nominate .....	III. 15. 2(b)
<i>Missionary Dioceses and Dioceses, united into Provinces</i> .....	<i>Art. VII</i>
Missionary Society, Domestic and Foreign .....	I. 3
Mode of presenting a Bishop for trial .....	IV. 5
Mode of securing an accurate view of the State of the Church .....	I. 5
Modification or remission of judicial sentences.....	IV. 13
Music of the Church.....	II. 6
Minister responsible for, in Congregation.....	II. 6. 1
Standing Commission on .....	II. 6. 2
<i>Name of the Church</i> .....	<i>Preamble</i>
New Canons, time of taking effect.....	V. 1. 5
<i>New Dioceses, Admission of</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 1</i>
<i>Consent of General Convention</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 1</i>
<i>Constitution and Canons of</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 5</i>
<i>Limit of Presbyters and Parishes</i> .....	<i>Art. V, 5</i>
New Dioceses, Created in any Province .....	I. 8. 2
Admitted into union with General Convention .....	I. 9. 4
Canon on .....	I. 9
Convocation of Area Mission may elect Bishop and Deputies of .....	I. 9. 5
In case of division of existing Diocese .....	I. 9. 3
Primary Convention of .....	I. 9. 1
How called when no Bishop.....	I. 9. 2
New American Bible, authorized.....	II. 2
New English Bible, authorized.....	II. 2
New Parish within limits of existing Parish .....	I. 12. 2(b)
Non-parochial Clergy to report .....	I. 5. 1
Objectives for General Church Program, Notice of allotted .....	I. 4. 6(c)
Diocese to allot to Parish .....	I. 4. 6(d)
Offense, Minister in any Diocese or Missionary Diocese chargeable with, in another .....	IV. 7
Offenses for which Bishops, Priests or Deacons may be tried .....	IV. 1
Offerings and alms for the poor.....	III. 20. 2(e)
Officiate, what included under term .....	III. 20. 5(a)
Officiating in any Congregation of this Church, persons not Ministers thereof .....	III. 24
<i>Orders and Dioceses, vote by</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>Ordination, Declaration of Bishops, Priests and Deacons</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
<i>Requisites for</i> .....	<i>Art. VIII</i>
Ordination, General Provisions respecting .....	III. 9
Canon of Ministers ordained in foreign countries by Bishops in communion with this Church .....	III. 13
Certificate required before officiating in this Church ....	III. 13. 1(a)
If Deacon, to reside in United States one year before ordered Priest.....	III. 13. 2
Letters Dimissory or credentials presented before taking charge of a Parish .....	III. 13. 1(b)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Canonical requirements complied with before appointment .....	III. 9. 2
Certificate to be in words prescribed .....	III. 9. 4(a)
Not signed by Candidates.....	III. 9. 4(b)
Council of Advice of Convocation of American Churches in Europe, and board appointed by Bishop of Area Mission, powers of, concerning.....	III. 9. 3(b)
In vacant jurisdiction another Bishop may be asked to act .....	III. 9. 3(c)
Ministers ordained in Churches not in communion with this Church .....	III. 12
Alternatives .....	III. 12. 5(a)
Declarations and certificates required .....	III. 12. 1, 3, 4
Ministers who have not received episcopal ordination .....	III. 12. 5(a)
Pre-ordination requirements.....	III. 12. 2(a)
Special prefaces authorized.....	III. 12. 3(b)
Mode of applying for dispensation .....	III. 9. 5
Requirements as to signature of Standing Committee.....	III. 9. 4(c)
Requirements as to signature of Vestry .....	III. 9. 4(d)
Special Cases	
Indigenes of certain specified communities .....	III. 8. 2
Limitation on movement .....	III. 8. 2(c)
Prior approval required, Bishops of Province.....	III. 8. 2(a)
Qualifications .....	III. 8. 2(b)
Self-supporting ministries	
Deacons.....	III. 10. 10
Conditions .....	III. 10. 10(a)
Functions.....	III. 10. 10(c)
Ordination to Priesthood .....	III. 10. 10(e)
Provisions of Pension Fund not to apply.....	III. 10. 10(d)
Study and training.....	III. 10. 10(b)(1)
Priests .....	III. 11. 10(a)
Service in Diaconate .....	III. 11. 10(b)
Study and Training .....	III. 11. 10(a)
Special testimonials in foreign lands.....	III. 9. 7(b)
Standing Committee gives reasons for declining to recommend .....	III. 9. 6
Testimonials and certificates apply to, beyond United States .....	III. 9. 7(a)
To be held at Ember Seasons .....	III. 9. 1
To the Diaconate .....	III. 10
Priesthood .....	III. 11
When Bishop Coadjutor, Suffragan or Missionary, may act.....	III. 9. 3(a)
Ordination of Bishops.....	III. 14
Bishop presiding at consecration has direction of service .....	III. 14. 1(b)
Consent of House of Deputies to House of Bishops .....	III. 14. 1(a)
During recess, General Convention, evidence of election sent to Standing Committees and Bishops.....	III. 14. 1(c)
If Bishops not consent in three months .....	III. 14. 1(c)
If Standing Committees or Bishops not consent .....	III. 14. 1(d)
Presiding Bishop take order for consecration .....	III. 14. 1(b)
Testimonials to Secretary, House of Deputies .....	III. 14. 1(a)
Ordinations, List of .....	I. 1. 6(a)
Organization of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1(a)
<i>Organization of Missionary Dioceses.....</i>	<i>Art. VI, 3</i>
Parents, of Infants baptized, to be instructed .....	III. 20. 2(b)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Parish, No Deacon to be Rector of a .....	III. 23. 2(a)
No person to minister in this Church unless duly authorized ....	III. 24
Suffragan Bishop cannot be Rector of a.....	III. 16. 8
Vestries agents and legal representatives of .....	I. 13. 2
Parish Boundaries .....	I. 12. 3(a)
Parish Register, to be exhibited to Bishop .....	III. 20. 2(d)
Every minister to record baptisms, confirmations, marriages, burials and names of communicants .....	III. 20. 3(a)
List of families .....	III. 20. 3(c)
Parish Vestries— <i>See</i> Vestries, Vestrymen, and Wardens.	
Parishes and Congregations .....	I. 12
Boundaries .....	I. 12. 2(a)
Boundaries, when not defined by Diocesan Conventions .....	I. 12. 3(a)
Canon not affect legal rights of property .....	I. 12. 3(c)
Congregation belong to Diocese where Parish is situated.....	I. 12. 1
Formation of new, within limits of existing Parish .....	I. 12. 2(b)
No Minister have seat in more than one Convention .....	I. 12. 1
Parochial Cure .....	I. 12. 3(b)
Parishes, on filling of vacant Cures .....	III. 22
Alms and offerings for poor .....	III. 20. 2(e)
Appointment of Almoner .....	III. 20. 2(e)
Certificate to Ecclesiastical Authority.....	III. 22. 3
Control of worship vested in Rector.....	III. 20. 1(a)
Duties of Ministers .....	III. 20
<i>re</i> Bishop's visitation.....	III. 20. 2(d)
Election of Assistant Minister .....	III. 22. 5
Election of Rector .....	III. 23
In case of two or more Congregations .....	III. 20. 5(a)
Exception.....	III. 20. 5(a)
Minister settled when engaged for one year.....	III. 22. 4
Ministers and their duties .....	III. 20
Notice to Bishop .....	III. 22. 1
Reading or distribution of Pastoral Letters .....	III. 20. 2(f)
Rector have control of church and buildings.....	III. 20. 1(b)
Register exhibited to Bishop .....	III. 20. 2(d)
Register of Official Acts.....	III. 20. 3(a)
State of Congregation presented to Bishop.....	III. 20. 2(d)
To keep Parish Registers .....	III. 20. 3(a)
List of families.....	III. 20. 3(c)
Parochial Cure, No Deacon ordered Priest until appointed to serve in some.....	III. 11. 9
What constitutes.....	I. 12. 3(b)
Pastoral Letter to be read to Congregations .....	III. 20. 2(f)
May be distributed in lieu of reading .....	III. 20. 2(f)
Presiding Bishop may issue, in own person .....	I. 2. 4(b)
Pastoral Relation, Dissolution of.....	III. 21
Canon not apply to Diocese where other provision made .....	III. 21. 4
Dissolution recorded by Secretary of Convention .....	III. 21. 1
Mode of settling differences.....	III. 21. 2
Rector cannot be removed against his will.....	III. 21. 1
Rector cannot resign without consent of Vestry .....	III. 21. 1

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Pension for Missionary Bishop after resignation.....	III. 18. 8(f)
Pension Fund, Church .....	I. 7
Administer pension system, other benefits .....	I. 7. 1
Assessments .....	I. 7. 3
Clergy in continuous service .....	I. 7. 5
Election of Trustees .....	I. 7. 2
General Convention may amend Canon on .....	I. 7. 8
Initial Reserve Fund .....	I. 7. 6
Life, accident, and health benefits.....	I. 7. 1
Limit on allotment.....	I. 7. 4
Maximum pension .....	I. 7. 5
Merger with General Clergy Relief Fund.....	I. 7. 7
Minimum pension .....	I. 7. 5
Retiring allowance .....	I. 7. 5
Royalties.....	I. 7. 3
To establish rules .....	I. 7. 5
Persons refused ordination in any Diocese not to be afterwards transferred thereto without consent of the Bishop .....	III. 20. 5(f)
Position Papers .....	III. 20. 2(g)
May be issued by House of Bishops in lieu of, or in addition to, Pastoral Letters.....	III. 20. 2(g)
Requirement of reading or distribution to Congregations may be made at time of issuing .....	III. 20. 2(g)
Prayer Book— <i>See</i> Book of Common Prayer.	
Presbyter— <i>See also</i> Minister; Priest; Rector.	
Abandonment of Communion of Church by .....	IV. 10
Deposition .....	IV. 10. 2
Standing Committee certify Bishop of facts .....	IV. 10. 1
Courts of Review for trial of.....	IV. 3. 2-13
Diocesan Court of trial of.....	IV. 3. 1
List of offenses for trial of.....	IV. 1. 1
Consent for presentment.....	IV. 1. 1
Conviction of immorality in Civil Court.....	IV. 1. 2
Time within which presentment must be made .....	IV. 1. 3
Presentment of a .....	IV. 2. 1
Mode of .....	IV. 2. 2
Sentence of Suspension .....	IV. 12. 1
<i>Presbyters and Deacons, Trial of</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Presenting a Bishop for trial .....	IV. 1. 2
Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 1. 2
Mode of .....	IV. 2. 2
Presentment, time within which, must be made.....	IV. 1. 3
President of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1(a), (b)
Advisory Council for .....	I. 1. 1(b)
<i>Ex officio</i> member of	
Executive Council .....	I. 4. 1(c)
Joint Committees and Commissions .....	I. 1. 2(d)
President of the Executive Council .....	I. 4. 1(c)
<i>Presiding Bishop, Election of</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 3</i>
<i>Duties of, shall be prescribed by Canons of General Convention</i> <i>Art. I, 3</i>	
<i>May, with consent of Executive Council, appoint another place for</i> <i>meeting of General Convention</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 7</i>

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

<i>Resignation or disability of</i> .....	Art. I, 3
<i>Succession in case of resignation, death or disability</i> .....	Art. I, 3
<i>Term and tenure of office shall be prescribed by Canons of General Convention</i> .....	Art. I, 3
Presiding Bishop, Assessment for expenses of.....	I. 1. 8
Canon on .....	I. 2
Chief pastor of Church and of episcopate .....	I. 2. 4(a)
Disability of .....	I. 2. 6
Disability allowance for .....	I. 2. 7(b)
Duties .....	I. 2. 4
Duties <i>re</i> Abandonment of communion of this Church by a Bishop .....	IV. 9. 1
<i>re</i> Congregations in foreign lands .....	I. 14. 7, 9, 13
<i>re</i> Consecration of Bishops.....	III. 14. 1(c)
<i>re</i> Disability of the Bishop of a Diocese .....	I. 11. 3
<i>re</i> Presentment, trial, of a Bishop .....	IV. 4. 5
<i>re</i> Resignation of a Bishop.....	III. 16. 5; 18. 7
Election of .....	I. 2. 1
Fill vacancy in office of Custodian of Standard Book of Common Prayer .....	II. 2. 7
In case of disability of .....	I. 2. 6
Issue summons for special meetings of General Convention....	I. 1. 3(a)
May assign jurisdiction in foreign lands.....	I. 14. 7
Missionary Bishops to report annually to.....	III. 20. 3
Nominating Committee .....	I. 2. 1
Pastoral Letters may be issued by .....	I. 2. 4(b)
Personal assistants for .....	I. 2. 5
President of Board of Directors of Domestic and Foreign Missionary Society .....	I. 3. III
Resign previous jurisdiction .....	I. 2. 3(a)
Report annually to Church .....	I. 2. 4(b)
Retiring allowance .....	I. 2. 7(a)
Stipend .....	I. 2. 5
Term of office to be twelve years .....	I. 2. 2
To be notified of certain depositions.....	IV. 12. 3(b)
To choose medical examiners for Bishop-elect .....	III. 14. 1(a)
To fill vacancy in office of Recorder.....	I. 1. 6(f)
Registrar .....	I. 1. 5(g)
To notify other Bishops of episcopal resignations .....	III. 16. 5; 18. 7
To take office twelve months after conclusion of Convention at which he is elected .....	I. 2. 2
To take order for consecration of Bishop-elect .....	III. 14. 1(b); III. 15. 2(d)
When vacancy occurs in Area Mission, charge devolves on....	III. 15. 7
Priest— <i>See also</i> Minister; Presbyter; Rector.	
<i>Declaration before Ordination</i> .....	Art. VIII
<i>Requisites for Ordination</i> .....	Art. VIII
Priesthood, Ordination to the .....	III. 11
Normal Standard of learning and examination of Candidates .....	III. 5
Examination for admission to Holy Orders in special cases ..	III. 8
Examination of Candidates from other Christian Bodies	III. 5. 1(c)
Requirements may be modified in special cases .....	III. 8. 1

---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Seminary examination not to supersede canonical examinations.....	III. 5. 3(a)
Subject matter of examination .....	III. 5. 1
Priesthood, <i>re</i> Ordination .....	III. 11
Advancement to, by Perpetual Deacon .....	III. 10. 10(e)
Age .....	III. 11. 1
Declaration of belief and conformity .....	III. 11. 8
Evidence of appointment to some Cure .....	III. 11. 9
If no Parish, by whom certificate to be signed .....	III. 11. 6(a)
Reasons for .....	III. 11. 6(b)
If Parish has no Minister, certificate signed by Presbyter.....	III. 11. 5
Papers to be laid before Standing Committee .....	III. 11. 4
Recommendation of Standing Committee .....	III. 11. 3
Testimonial of Standing Committee .....	III. 11. 7
To be Deacon one year and Candidate for two years.....	III. 11. 2
Primary Convention of new Dioceses .....	I. 9. 1
Program, Executive Council to submit to General Convention for triennium .....	I. 4. 6(a)
Joint Session for presentation .....	I. 4. 6(b)
Property, Alienation of real, requires consent of Bishop and Standing Committee .....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
Encumbrance of, requires consent of Bishop and Standing Committee.....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
Parishes and Congregations not affect legal rights of .....	I. 12. 3(c)
Parish Vestries power to encumber, restricted.....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
Power to encumber, restricted.....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
<i>Provinces, Dioceses and Missionary Dioceses united into.....</i>	<i>Art. VII</i>
Provinces, How Constituted.....	I. 8. 1
Bishops have seat and vote .....	I. 8. 5
New Diocese and Missionary Diocese created.....	I. 8. 2
Powers of Synods.....	I. 8. 8
President of.....	I. 8. 6
Representatives of Dioceses and Missionary Dioceses.....	I. 8. 7
Representatives of, on Executive Council.....	I. 4. 1(c), 2(b)
Synod of, may nominate Missionary Bishop .....	III. 15. 2(b)
Synodical rights and privileges .....	I. 8. 3
Synods.....	I. 8. 4
Provincial Courts of Review .....	I. 8. 8; IV. 3. 2
Provincial Synods .....	I. 8. 4
Consider subjects referred by General Convention .....	I. 8. 10
Elect Judges of Court of Review .....	I. 8. 8; IV. 3. 4
Powers .....	I. 8. 8
Report findings on proposed appropriations .....	I. 4. 6(a)
Representatives.....	I. 8. 7
Take over administration of work .....	I. 8. 9
<i>Quorum of House of Bishops .....</i>	<i>Art. I, 2</i>
<i>House of Deputies.....</i>	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
Quorum of Executive Council .....	I. 4. 4(b)
Quorum of Standing Committee and other bodies .....	I. 11. 2

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Race no bar to Church membership .....	I. 16. 4
Recorder of Ordinations .....	I. 1. 6(a)
Data and statistics to .....	I. 1. 6(b)
Duties .....	I. 1. 6(a)
Duty to furnish information .....	I. 1. 6(b)
Exceptions .....	I. 1. 6(b)
Election .....	I. 1. 6(a)
Expenses .....	I. 1. 6(d)
To be notified of certain depositions .....	IV. 12. 3(b), 6
Vacancy filled by Presiding Bishop .....	I. 1. 6(f)
Rector— <i>See also</i> Minister.	
Deacon not permitted to be, of a Parish .....	III. 23. 2(a)
Rector, Election of .....	III. 22
Certificate to Ecclesiastical Authority .....	III. 22. 3
Minister settled when engaged for one year .....	III. 22. 4
Election of Assistant Minister .....	III. 22. 5
Not removed against will .....	III. 21. 1
Not resign without consent of Vestry .....	III. 21. 1
Powers of .....	III. 20. 1
Resignation .....	III. 21. 1
Resignation required at age seventy-two .....	III. 20. 10
Right of, to preside at meetings of Vestry .....	I. 13. 2
Register of baptisms to be kept .....	III. 20. 3
Registrar of General Convention .....	I. 1. 5
Appointment in case of vacancy .....	I. 1. 5(g)
Expenses .....	I. 1. 5(e)
Journals and papers delivered to .....	I. 1. 5(f)
May be Historiographer .....	I. 1. 5(d)
Prepare Letters of Consecration .....	I. 1. 5(c)
Records of Consecrations .....	I. 1. 5(b); III. 17. 4
Regulations respecting the Laity .....	I. 16
Religious Communities .....	III. 27
Appointment of a Visitor .....	III. 27. 8
Chaplain of .....	III. 27. 4
Official recognition not to be withdrawn .....	III. 27. 9
Prayer Book to be used .....	III. 27. 5
Property held in trust .....	III. 27. 6
Rule and constitution approved by Bishop .....	III. 27. 1
Remission or modification of judicial sentences .....	IV. 13
Renunciation of the Ministry .....	IV. 8; IV. 10. 1
Repeal, enactment, and amendment of Canons .....	V. 1
Repealed Canon, no re-enactment thereby .....	V. 1. 2
Reports, Annual	
From Dioceses, on form prepared by Executive Council, to Executive Council .....	I. 5. 2
Receipts and disbursements .....	I. 4. 7; I. 5. 1
Statistics .....	I. 5. 1
From Ministers, to Bishop .....	I. 5. 1
From Missionary Bishops, to Presiding Bishop .....	III. 19. 3
From Parishes, on form prepared by Executive Council, to Executive Council .....	I. 5. 1
Report Forms—Executive Council approve .....	I. 5. 1, 2

---



## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Repulsion from the Holy Communion .....	I. 16. 6
<i>Resignation of a Bishop</i> .....	<i>Art. II, 6</i>
Resignation of a Bishop .....	III. 18. 8
Rector—not to resign without consent of Vestry .....	III. 21. 1
Retiring allowance, Missionary Bishops, Bishops holding office created by General Convention.....	III. 18. 8(e)
<i>Retrocession of territorial jurisdiction</i> .....	<i>Art. VI, 2</i>
<i>Review, Court of</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>Of trial of Bishops to be composed of Bishops</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Review, Court of, for the Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 15-17
Of a Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 2-13
Revised Standard Version of the Bible authorized .....	II. 2
Revised Versions of the Holy Scriptures authorized to be read in Church .....	II. 2
<i>Rubrics and Lessons in Book of Common Prayer, Amendments to     Tables of</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Rules of Order House of Deputies.....	I. 1. 1(g)
Sacraments, when not to be refused .....	I. 16. 7(a)
Secretaries of Diocesan Convention, duties of.....	I. 1. 1(c), 5. 3(a)
Secretary of General Convention .....	I. 1. 1
Responsible for printing Journal.....	I. 1. 1(j)
Secretary of House of Deputies to be elected as .....	I. 1. 1(j)
To receive notices of changes in Canons .....	V. 1. 4(a)
To receive notices of changes in Constitution .....	V. 1. 4(b)
Secretary of House of Bishops	
List of inactive Clergy in charge of .....	IV. 11. 2
To be notified of certain depositions.....	IV. 12. 3(c), 6
Secretary of House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1; I. 5. 3(a); IV. 12. 3(b)
Appointment in case of vacancy .....	I. 1. (i)
Entitled to seat but no vote.....	I. 1. (f)
Testimonials of Deputies and Diocesan Journals to .....	I. 1. 1(c)
To keep minutes.....	I. 1. (d)
Seminaries—Board of Theological Education and membership.....	III. 6. 1
Duties .....	III. 6. 2
To report to Board .....	III. 6. 3
<i>Sentence of suspension, removal, or deposition to be pronounced by     Bishop</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Sentences .....	IV. 12
Bishop may pronounce lesser sentence.....	IV. 12. 3(a)
Deposition from Ministry .....	IV. 12. 2
In case trial right is waived.....	IV. 12. 3(d)
Inhibition .....	IV. 12. 3(e)
Notice in writing .....	IV. 12. 3(a)
Opportunity given accused .....	IV. 12. 4
Procedure .....	IV. 12. 5
Notice given.....	IV. 12. 3(c)
Pronounced by Bishop.....	IV. 12. 5
Pronounced in presence of Presbyters .....	IV. 12. 3(c)
Renunciation of Ministry.....	IV. 12. 3(b)
Suspension .....	IV. 12. 1
Terms and duration of suspension specified.....	IV. 12. 1
Time and place.....	IV. 12. 3(a)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Which may be imposed .....	IV. 12. 1
Sentences, Remission or modification of judicial .....	IV. 13
Bishop .....	IV. 13. 1
Proviso .....	IV. 13. 1
Minister .....	IV. 13. 2
Approval of Ecclesiastical Authority if residing out of	
Diocese .....	IV. 13. 4
Bishop give notice of remission .....	IV. 13. 5
Consent of Standing Committee.....	IV. 13. 2(1)
In case of abandonment of communion of Church .....	IV. 13. 3
Submit proposed action to five Bishops.....	IV. 13. 2(2)
Service, Authorization of Special Forms of.....	II. 5
For worshipping in foreign language .....	II. 5
Solemnization of Matrimony .....	I. 17
<i>Special Forms of Worship</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Special List of Clergy .....	IV. 11. 2
Kept by Secretary of House of Bishops .....	IV. 11. 2(a)
Accessions.....	IV. 11. 2(a)
How restored to diocesan roll.....	IV. 11. 2(b)
Removal from List and deposition .....	IV. 11. 2(d)
While enrolled, not on diocesan roll.....	IV. 11. 2(c)
<i>Special Meetings of General Convention</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 7</i>
Deputies thereto .....	I. 1. 3(b)
How called .....	I. 9. 3(a)
Standard Bible.....	II. 2
Standard Book of Common Prayer, <i>See also</i> Prayer Book .....	II. 3
Custodian of .....	II. 3. 6, 7
Standing Commissions	
On Church Music .....	II. 6. 2
On Structure of Church.....	I. 1. 2(f)
Standing Liturgical Commission .....	II. 4
Standing Committee, Council of Advice of Convocation of American Churches in Europe, and boards appointed by Bishop in charge of Area Mission have same power as, in respect	
of ordination Canons .....	III. 9. 3(b)
Ecclesiastical authority in case of absence of Bishop .....	I. 11. 3; III. 18. 5
Disability of Bishop .....	I. 11. 3
Majority of quorum to act .....	I. 11. 2
Meetings .....	I. 11. 1
Quorum .....	I. 11. 2
Requirements as to signature of, to certificate of ordination.....	III. 9. 3(c)
To act for Bishop when acting as Ecclesiastical Authority.....	III. 2. 4
To approve any encumbrance of real property .....	I. 6. 3; II. 7. 1
To approve modification of judicial sentences .....	IV. 13. 2(1)
To approve revision of judicial sentences .....	IV. 13. 2(1)
To recommend Candidates for ordination to Diaconate .....	III. 10. 4
Papers of Candidates laid before .....	III. 10. 5
To recommend Deacons to be ordained Priest .....	III. 11. 3
Paper of Candidates laid before .....	III. 11. 4
When clerical members of, to act .....	III. 4. 1(c)
<i>Standing Committee, Ecclesiastical Authority of Diocese when no Bishop in charge</i> .....	<i>Art. IV</i>
<i>In every Diocese</i> .....	<i>Art. IV</i>

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

<i>Rights and duties prescribed by Canons of Diocese</i> .....	Art. IV
<i>To be Bishop's Council of Advice</i> .....	Art. IV
<i>To concur in election of Presiding Bishop in interim of Convention</i> .....	Art. I, 3
<i>To give consent to resignation of Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor when elected to another jurisdiction</i> .....	Art. II, 8
Standing Liturgical Commission— <i>See</i> Liturgical Commission.	
State of the Church, Annual reports to Bishop .....	I. 5. 1
Information included .....	I. 5. 1
Committee of House of Deputies on.....	I. 5. 3(b)
Diocesan Journals to Secretary of House of Deputies.....	I. 5. 3(a)
Mode of securing accurate view of .....	I. 5
Presiding Bishop may address the Convention on.....	I. 2. 4(a)(4)
Reports on .....	I. 5. 3(b)
Statistics, Sent to Recorder.....	I. 1. 6(b)
Strategy and policy of the Church	
Presiding Bishop to give leadership in .....	I. 2. 4(a)(1)
Structure, Standing Commission on.....	I. 1. 2(f)
<i>Suffragan Bishop, Election of</i> .....	Art. II, 4
<i>May be placed in charge of Diocese on death of Bishop</i> .....	Art. II, 5
<i>To have seat and vote in House of Bishops</i> .....	Art. I, 2
Suffragan Bishop, Act as Assistant to Bishop.....	III. 16. 5
Cannot be Rector of a Parish .....	III. 16. 8
Concurrence of General Convention.....	III. 16. 2(a)
Consent of Bishops and Standing Committees.....	III. 16. 2(a)
Consent of General Convention or Bishops and Standing Committees necessary.....	III. 16. 2(a)
Election during recess .....	III. 16. 2(a)
Election of .....	III. 16. 1
Election of Missionary Bishop as .....	III. 15. 6(a)
Eligibility as Bishop or Bishop Coadjutor .....	III. 16. 7(a)
Alternative procedure .....	III. 16. 7(b)
Consent to validity of election .....	III. 16. 7(a)
Eligibility of Missionary Bishop as .....	III. 15. 6(a)
For Missionary Diocese.....	III. 16. 4
Limitation on exercise of episcopal functions .....	III. 16. 6(d)
New election allowed if election not completed.....	III. 16. 2(c)
Not more than two in one Diocese.....	III. 16. 3
Resignation.....	III. 16. 6
Resignation required at age seventy-two years .....	III. 16. 6(a)
House of Deputies to be notified .....	III. 16. 6(b)
Presiding Bishop to communicate fact of acceptance.....	III. 16. 6(b)
Presiding Bishop to notify other Bishops .....	III. 16. 6(a)
Procedure in case of failure so to resign .....	III. 16. 6(c)
Record to be made .....	III. 16. 6(b)
To be tendered to Presiding Bishop.....	III. 16. 6(a)
Tenure of office .....	III. 16. 6(d)
When may act on ordination.....	III. 9. 3(a)
Sunday, Due celebration of .....	II. 1
Lord's Day observed .....	II. 1
<i>Suspension, sentence of</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Bishop to pronounce</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Remission of, to be provided for by Canon</i> .....	Art. IX

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

<i>Specify terms, conditions and duration</i> .....	Art. IX
Suspension, Sentence must include terms, conditions and duration	IV. 12. 1
Synods, Rights and privileges.....	I. 8. 3
Provincial .....	I. 8. 4
<i>See also Provincial Synods.</i>	
 <i>Tables of Lessons and Psalms in Book of Common Prayer,</i>	
<i>Amendments to</i> .....	Art. X
Terminology <i>re</i> jurisdictions, in Canons .....	V. 2
<i>Territory of one Diocese may be ceded to another</i> .....	Art. V, 8
<i>Mutual agreement</i> .....	Art. V, 8
<i>Permission of General Convention or of Bishops and Standing</i>	
<i>Committees required</i> .....	Art. V, 8
Testimonial Letters— <i>See</i> Letters, Testimonial.	
Theological Education, Board for	
How constituted .....	III. 6. 1
Duties .....	III. 6. 2
Seminaries to furnish information.....	III. 6. 3
Time of new Canons taking effect .....	V. 1. 5
Time when these Canons take effect.....	V. 1. 5
Time within which presentment must be made .....	IV. 1. 3
Transfer of a Deacon .....	III. 23. 4
<i>Translation of Bishops</i> .....	Art. II, 8
Translations of the Bible .....	II. 2
Treasurer of General Convention.....	I. 1. 7-12
Authorized to borrow .....	I. 1. 9
Bond .....	I. 1. 10
Duties .....	I. 1. 7(a)
Election of .....	I. 1. 7(a)
Entitled to seat but no vote.....	I. 1. 1(f)
May appoint an Assistant Treasurer.....	I. 1. 12
Bonding of.....	I. 1. 12
To submit budget.....	I. 1. 11
Treasurers, Bonding of .....	I. 1. 10; I. 6. 1(3)
Trial, Amenability, citation and attendance .....	IV. 2
Case of Minister convicted of immorality in Civil Court .....	IV. 1. 2
Consent required for presentment.....	IV. 1. 1
Courts for Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 14
Courts of Review of Trial of Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 2-13
Courts, their membership and procedure .....	IV. 3
Diocesan Courts for trial of Presbyter or Deacon.....	IV. 3. 1
Duty to give evidence .....	IV. 2. 4
List of offenses .....	IV. 1. 1
Minister absenting himself from Diocese or abandoning work of	
Ministry, presented for.....	IV. 11. 1
Mode of citation.....	IV. 2. 2
Mode of serving other citations .....	IV. 2. 3
Offenses for which Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon may be tried	IV. 1. 1
Presentment of a Bishop, Presbyter, or Deacon.....	IV. 4
Time within which presentment must be made .....	IV. 1. 3
Trial Court, <i>See also</i> Trial of a Bishop.	
Accused to be heard .....	IV. 3. 22
Appeal in questions of doctrine, etc. ....	IV. 3. 6

---

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Board of Inquiry .....	IV. 3. 21
Church Advocate .....	IV. 3. 9, 23
Clerks .....	IV. 3. 20(c)
Commissioner .....	IV. 3. 22
Constitution of Court .....	IV. 3. 3
Court of Bishops only .....	IV. 3. 15
Court of Review of Trial of Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 2-13
Bishop .....	IV. 3. 15-17
Court for Trial of a Bishop .....	IV. 3. 14
Cross examination and proviso .....	IV. 3. 22
Diocesan Courts for trial of Presbyter or Deacon .....	IV. 3. 1
Disqualification of member of Board .....	IV. 3. 18(a), (c)
Expenses of Boards of Inquiry .....	IV. 3. 24
Expenses of Court of Review .....	IV. 3. 24
Jurisdiction .....	IV. 3. 5, 14(b), 16
Lay Assessors .....	IV. 3. 20(c)
Legal Adviser .....	IV. 3. 23
Membership in Courts .....	IV. 3. 18, 19
Mode of selecting Judges .....	IV. 3. 4, 14(a)
Mode of taking deposition .....	IV. 3. 22
Non-concurrence of Court .....	IV. 3. 12
Notice of appeal .....	IV. 3. 6
Notice to Court and Parties .....	IV. 3. 8
On what conditions deposition may be read .....	IV. 3. 22
Organization of Court .....	IV. 3. 10
Power to dispose of case .....	IV. 3. 11
Power to summon witnesses .....	IV. 3. 22
Presented for erroneous doctrine by any ten Bishops .....	IV. 4. 2
President .....	IV. 3. 22
Presiding Judge .....	IV. 3. 20(b)
Printed copy of record of .....	IV. 3. 9
Quorum .....	IV. 3. 14(c), 17
Record of proceedings .....	IV. 3. 8, 21
Records to Ecclesiastical Authority of jurisdiction .....	IV. 3. 12
Relationships which disqualify a Judge .....	IV. 3. 18(a)
Right of Appeal .....	IV. 3. 6
Rules of procedure .....	IV. 3. 20(c)
Sentence .....	IV. 3. 13
Stay of proceedings in Trial Court .....	IV. 3. 2
Time and place for hearing appeal .....	IV. 3. 8
Transcript of record sent to President of Court of Review .....	IV. 3. 7
Two-thirds of court necessary to pronounce judgment .....	IV. 3. 12
Vacancies .....	IV. 3. 18(b), 19
What may come before Court of Review .....	IV. 3. 7
<i>Trial of a Bishop, Court of, to be composed of Bishops</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>Court of Review for, to be composed of Bishops</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
Trial of a Bishop, Adjudged guilty, not to officiate .....	IV. 4. 6
Appeals to Court of Review on .....	IV. 5
Bishops making presentment select Church Advocate .....	IV. 3. 23
Call to plead .....	IV. 5. 2(b)
Contumacy .....	IV. 5. 2(c)
Court for .....	IV. 3. 14; 5. 1
Court may modify penalty .....	IV. 5. 7

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

Court of review of .....	IV. 3. 15-17
Court to dispose of case .....	IV. 6. 5
Proviso .....	IV. 6. 5
Decision in writing and signed .....	IV. 4. 5
Declaration of witnesses before testifying .....	IV. 4. 3
Dismissal of appeal .....	IV. 6. 7
Evidence .....	IV. 6. 4
Exceptions part of record .....	IV. 5. 8
Guilt to be approved by two-thirds of all Bishops .....	IV. 6. 5
Heard before sentence .....	IV. 4. 7
Judgment .....	IV. 4. 5
New trial .....	IV. 4. 7
Non-appearance .....	IV. 5. 2(c)
Notice of appeal .....	IV. 6. 2
Notice to Court .....	IV. 5. 1(a)
Opinion on each charge or specification .....	IV. 5. 4
Power to adjourn .....	IV. 5. 2(b)
Reading presentment .....	IV. 5. 2(a)
Record, how kept and attested .....	IV. 5. 8(b)
Right of accused .....	IV. 5. 2(b)
Right of appeal .....	IV. 6. 1
Rules of procedure .....	IV. 5. 3
Sentence .....	IV. 5. 7; 6. 6
Stay of proceedings in Trial Court .....	IV. 6. 7
Summons of accused .....	IV. 5. 1(b)
Three months grace to appear .....	IV. 5. 1(c)
Time and place .....	IV. 5. 1(a)
Time for hearing appeal .....	IV. 6. 2
Transcript laid before Court .....	IV. 6. 3
Waiver of appeal .....	IV. 6. 7
Trial of a Deacon, Courts of review of .....	IV. 3. 2-13
Trial of a Presbyter, Courts of review of .....	IV. 3. 2-13
<i>Trial of Presbyters and Deacons</i> .....	Art. IX
<i>Trial Use of proposed revisions of Book of Common Prayer authorized</i> .....	Art. X
Trial-Use material	
Must bear certificate of Custodian .....	II. 3. 6
To be protected by copyright .....	II. 3. 6
Variations, etc., during period .....	II. 3. 6(c)
Trust Funds, Record of .....	I. 6. 1(2)
Trustees, <i>See</i> Churchwardens.	
United States, Testimonials and certificates of Ordination to apply beyond .....	III. 9. 7(a)
Vacancies, Filling of on Courts and Boards .....	IV. 3. 19
Board of Inquiry .....	IV. 3. 19(5)
Custodian of Standard Book of Common Prayer .....	II. 3. 7
Deputies .....	I. 1. 3(c)
Executive Council members .....	I. 4. 2(b)
<i>Presiding Bishop</i> .....	Art. I, 3
Recorder .....	I. 1. 6(f)
Rector .....	III. 22
Registrar .....	I. 1. 5(g)

## INDEX TO THE CONSTITUTION AND CANONS

---

Secretary, House of Deputies .....	I. 1. 1(i)
Standing Liturgical Commission .....	II. 4. 2(b)
Treasurer, General Convention .....	I. 1. 7(b)
Trial Courts .....	IV. 3. 19
Trustees, Church Pension Fund .....	I. 7. 2
Vacant Cures, Certificate to Ecclesiastical Authority .....	III. 22. 1
Election of Rector .....	III. 22. 2
Filling of .....	III. 22
Notice to Bishop .....	III. 22. 3
Vacant Dioceses .....	III. 18. 6(a)
Vestries, Agents and legal representatives of Parish .....	I. 13. 2
Parish .....	I. 13
Power to encumber property restricted .....	I. 6. 3
Rector to preside .....	I. 13. 3
Regulations left to State or Diocesan Law .....	I. 13. 1
Vestry of Parish, Requirements as to signature of, to certificate of	
Ordination .....	III. 9. 4(d)
Vestrymen .....	I. 13. 1
Visit of Bishop to each Church every three years .....	III. 18. 2(a)
Visitation of every jurisdiction by Presiding Bishop .....	I. 2. 4(a)(5)
<i>Vote, by Orders</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
<i>Vote, When majority of vote shall suffice</i> .....	<i>Art. I, 4</i>
Wardens, <i>See</i> Churchwardens.	
Women in Diaconate .....	III. 26
Pension provisions .....	III. 26. 7
Requirements .....	III. 26. 2-6
Worship, Control of, in Parish vested in Rector .....	III. 20. 1(a)
<i>Worship, Doctrine or Faith, Court of Appeal on</i> .....	<i>Art. IX</i>
<i>Worship, Special Forms of</i> .....	<i>Art. X</i>
Year, Fiscal .....	I. 6. 1(8)